

FORD **TOURNEO COURIER** / **TRANSIT COURIER** Owner's Manual



The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of going to print. In the interest of continuous development, we reserve the right to change specifications, design or equipment at any time without notice or obligation. No part of this publication may be reproduced, transmitted, stored in a retrieval system or translated into any language in any form by any means without our written permission. Errors and omissions excepted.

© Ford Motor Company 2021

All rights reserved.

Part Number: CG3822en 202106 20210629065228

Table of Contents

Introduction

About This Manual	7
Symbols Glossary	7
REACH	9
Replacement Parts Recommendation	9
Special Notices	10
Mobile Communications Equipment	10

Data Privacy

Data Privacy	11
Service Data	12
Event Data	12
Settings Data	13
Mobile Device Data - Vehicles With: SYNC 3	13
Emergency Call System Data	14

Environment

Protecting the Environment	15
----------------------------------	----

At a Glance

Instrument Panel - LHD	16
Instrument Panel - RHD	17

Child Safety

Installing Child Restraints	18
Child Restraint Positioning	22
Child Safety Locks	26

Seatbelts

Fastening the Seatbelts	27
Seatbelt Reminder	30

Supplementary Restraints System

Principle of Operation	31
Driver Airbag	31
Passenger Airbag	32

Switching the Passenger Airbag On and Off	32
Side Airbags	33
Driver Knee Airbag	34
Side Curtain Airbags	34

Emergency Assistance

What Is Emergency Assistance	35
Emergency Call Requirements	36
Emergency Call Limitations	37

Keys and Remote Controls

General Information on Radio Frequencies	38
Remote Control	38
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control	40

Doors and Locks

Locking and Unlocking	41
-----------------------------	----

Liftgate

Manual Liftgate	45
-----------------------	----

Security

Passive Anti-Theft System	46
Anti-Theft Alarm	46

Steering Wheel

Adjusting the Steering Wheel	48
------------------------------------	----

Wipers and Washers

Windshield Wipers	49
Autowipers	49
Windshield Washers	50
Rear Window Wiper and Washers	51

Lighting

General Information	52
Lighting Control	52

Table of Contents

Autolamps	53
Instrument Lighting Dimmer	53
Headlamp Exit Delay	53
Front Fog Lamps	53
Rear Fog Lamps	54
Headlamp Leveling	54
Direction Indicators	55
Interior Lamps	55

Windows and Mirrors

Power Windows - Vehicles With: One-Touch Open Driver Window	56
Power Windows - Vehicles With: One-Touch Open and Close Front Windows	56
Exterior Mirrors	57
Interior Mirror - Vehicles With: Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror/Interior Mirror With Camera Display	58
Interior Mirror - Vehicles With: Interior Mirror	58
Sliding Door Window	58

Instrument Cluster

Gauges	59
Warning Lamps and Indicators	61
Audible Warnings and Indicators	64

Information Displays

General Information	65
Trip Computer	67
Information Messages	68

Climate Control

Air Vents	73
Manual Climate Control	73
Automatic Climate Control	74
Hints on Controlling the Interior Climate - Vehicles With: Automatic Temperature Control	75

Hints on Controlling the Interior Climate - Vehicles With: Manual Temperature Control	76
Heated Windshield	77
Heated Rear Window	77
Heated Exterior Mirrors	77

Seats

Sitting in the Correct Position	78
Head Restraints	78
Manual Seats	79
Rear Seats	81
Heated Seats	83

Auxiliary Power Points

Auxiliary Power Points	84
Cigar Lighter	84

Storage

Cup Holders	85
Overhead Storage	85
Instrument Panel Storage	85
Under Seat Storage	85
Device Holder	86

Starting and Stopping the Engine

General Information	87
Ignition Switch	87
Steering Wheel Lock	88
Starting a Gasoline Engine	88
Starting a Diesel Engine	89
Switching Off the Engine	91

Unique Driving Characteristics

Auto-Start-Stop	92
-----------------------	----

Fuel and Refueling

Safety Precautions	94
--------------------------	----

Table of Contents

Fuel Quality - Gasoline	94
Fuel Quality - Diesel	95
Fuel Filler Funnel Location	95
Running Out of Fuel	95
Refueling	97

Engine Emission Control

Catalytic Converter - 1.0L EcoBoost™	100
Selective Catalytic Reductant System - 1.5L Duratorq-TDCi Diesel	100
Gasoline Particulate Filter - 1.0L EcoBoost™	105
Diesel Particulate Filter - 1.5L Duratorq-TDCi Diesel	107

Transmission

Manual Transmission	110
---------------------------	-----

Brakes

General Information	111
Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes	111
Parking Brake	111
Hill Start Assist	112

Traction Control

Principle of Operation	113
Using Traction Control	113

Stability Control

Principle of Operation	114
Using Stability Control	114

Parking Aids

Principle of Operation	115
Rear Parking Aid	115
Front Parking Aid	116
Rear View Camera	118

Cruise Control

Principle of Operation	121
Using Cruise Control	121

Driving Aids

Speed Limiter	122
---------------------	-----

Load Carrying

Load Carrying Precautions	123
Roof Rack	123

Rear Cargo Area

Installing and Removing the Rear Cargo Net	125
Installing and Removing the Rear Cargo Luggage Cover	126
Rear Cargo Area Anchor Points	127
Installing and Removing the Bulkhead	128

Towing

Towing a Trailer	129
Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels	130

Driving Hints

Reduced Engine Performance	131
Economical Driving	131
Cold Weather Precautions	131
Breaking-In	132
Driving Through Water	132
Floor Mats	132

Roadside Emergencies

Hazard Flashers	134
First Aid Kit	134
Warning Triangle	134
Fuel Shutoff	134
Jump Starting the Vehicle	135
Towing Points	136

Table of Contents

Fuses

Fuse Box Locations	138
Fuse Specification Chart	139
Changing a Fuse	146

Maintenance

General Information	148
Opening and Closing the Hood	148
Under Hood Overview - 1.0L EcoBoost™ LHD	150
Under Hood Overview - 1.0L EcoBoost™ RHD	151
Under Hood Overview - 1.5L Duratorq-TDCi Diesel, LHD	152
Under Hood Overview - 1.5L Duratorq-TDCi Diesel, RHD	153
Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.0L EcoBoost™	154
Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.5L Duratorq-TDCi Diesel	154
Engine Oil Check	154
Engine Cooling Fan - Gasoline	155
Engine Cooling Fan - Diesel	155
Engine Coolant Check	155
Brake Fluid Check	156
Clutch Fluid Check	157
Changing the 12V Battery	157
Washer Fluid Check	159
Checking the Wiper Blades	159
Changing the Front Wiper Blades	159
Changing the Rear Wiper Blades - Vehicles With: Manual Liftgate	160
Changing the Rear Wiper Blades - Vehicles With: Rear Cargo Doors	160
Changing a Bulb	161

Vehicle Care

Cleaning the Exterior	166
Cleaning the Interior	167
Repairing Minor Paint Damage	169
Cleaning the Wheels	169

Wheels and Tires

General Information	170
Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit	170
Tire Care	174
Using Summer Tires	175
Using Winter Tires	175
Using Snow Chains	175
Tire Pressure Monitoring System	176
Changing a Road Wheel	180
Tire Pressures - Tourneo	186
Tire Pressures - Transit	188
Lug Nuts	189

Capacities and Specifications

Vehicle Dimensions - Tourneo	190
Vehicle Dimensions - Transit	191
Vehicle Identification Plate	192
Vehicle Identification Number	193
Capacities and Specifications - 1.0L EcoBoost™	193
Capacities and Specifications - 1.5L Duratorq-TDCi Diesel	195
Bulb Specification Chart	197
Fuel Consumption Figures - 1.0L EcoBoost™	199
Fuel Consumption Figures - 1.5L Duratorq-TDCi Diesel	200
Fuel Consumption Figures	201

Audio System

Audio Unit - Vehicles Without: SYNC 3	202
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: SYNC 3, Vehicles Without: Touchscreen Display	203
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: SYNC 3/ Touchscreen Display	205
AM/FM Radio - Vehicles Without: SYNC 3	206
Digital Radio - Vehicles Without: SYNC 3	207

Table of Contents

Audio Unit Clock and Date Displays - Vehicles Without: SYNC 3	207
Connecting a Bluetooth® Device - Vehicles Without: SYNC 3	207
Streaming Bluetooth Audio - Vehicles Without: SYNC 3	207
Playing Media From a USB Device - Vehicles Without: SYNC 3	208
USB Port	208
Using Voice Recognition - Vehicles Without: SYNC 3	208

SYNC™ 3 - Vehicles Without: Touchscreen Display

General Information	210
Using Voice Recognition	211
Entertainment	215
Phone	217
Apps	218
Settings	219
SYNC™ 3 Troubleshooting	224

SYNC™ 3 - Vehicles With: Touchscreen Display

General Information	234
Using Voice Recognition	236
Entertainment	242
Climate	244
Phone	247
Navigation	249
Apps	253
Settings	254
SYNC™ 3 Troubleshooting	256

Appendices

Electromagnetic Compatibility	266
End User License Agreement	269
Declaration of Conformity	294

Introduction

ABOUT THIS MANUAL

Thank you for choosing Ford. We recommend that you take some time to get to know your vehicle by reading this manual. The more that you know about your vehicle, the greater the safety and pleasure you will get from driving it.



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

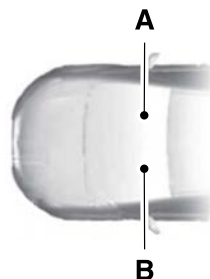
Note: This manual describes product features and options available throughout the range of available models, sometimes even before they are generally available. It may describe options not fitted to the vehicle you have purchased.

Note: Some of the illustrations in this manual may show features as used in different models, so may appear different to you on your vehicle.

Note: Always use and operate your vehicle in line with all applicable laws and regulations.

Note: Pass on this manual when selling your vehicle. It is an integral part of your vehicle.

This manual may qualify the location of a component as left-hand side or right-hand side. The side is determined when facing forward in the seat.



- A Right-hand side.
- B Left-hand side.

SYMBOLS GLOSSARY

These are some of the symbols you may see on your vehicle.



Safety alert.



See the Owner's Manual.



Air conditioning system.



Anti-lock braking system.



Avoid smoking, flames or sparks.



Battery.



Battery acid.



Brake fluid level.

Introduction



Brake system.



Brake failure.



Cabin air filter.



Check fuel cap.



Child safety door lock.



Child safety door unlock.



Child seat lower anchor.



Child seat tether anchor.



Cruise control.



Do not open when hot.



Electronic power steering malfunction.



Engine air filter.



Engine coolant.



Engine coolant temperature.



Engine oil.



Explosive gas.



Fan warning.



Fasten seatbelt.



Front airbag.



Front fog lamps.



Fuel pump reset.



Fuse compartment.



Hazard warning flashers.



Heated rear window.



Heated windshield.



Interior luggage compartment release.



Jack.



Keep out of reach of children.



Lighting control.



Low tire pressure warning.

Introduction



Maintain correct fluid level.



Panic alarm.



Parking aid.



Parking brake.



Power steering fluid.



Power windows.



Power window lockout.



Malfunction indicator lamp (MIL).



Service engine soon.



Side airbag.



Shield the eyes.



Stability control.



Windshield wash and wipe.

REACH

We are committed to promoting the responsible manufacturing, handling and use of our products and support the underlying goals of **REACH**, a European Union regulation that concerns the registration, evaluation, authorisation and restriction of chemicals.

We specifically support Regulation EC 1907/2006 Article 33(1) that relates to substances of very high concern which appear on the current list for authorisation.

If these substances do exist in a product, it is important to guarantee their safe use so the regulation is designed to enable you to take any appropriate risk management measures.

To find out more about the **REACH** directive, search **REACH** on the local Ford website.

Note: To find the local Ford website, visit <https://corporate.ford.com/operations/locations/global-links.html>.

REPLACEMENT PARTS RECOMMENDATION

We have built your vehicle to the highest standards using quality parts. We recommend that you demand the use of genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts whenever your vehicle requires scheduled maintenance or repair. You can clearly identify genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts by looking for the Ford, FoMoCo or Motorcraft branding on the parts or their packaging.

Introduction

Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical Repairs

One of the best ways for you to make sure that your vehicle provides years of service is to have it maintained in line with our recommendations using parts that conform to the specifications detailed in this Owner's Manual.

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts meet or exceed these specifications.

Collision Repairs

We hope that you never experience a collision, but accidents happen sometimes.

Genuine Ford replacement collision parts meet our stringent requirements for fit, finish, structural integrity, corrosion protection and dent resistance. During vehicle development we validate that these parts deliver the intended level of protection as a whole system. A great way to know for sure you are getting this level of protection is to use genuine Ford replacement collision parts.

Warranty on Replacement Parts

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft replacement parts are the only replacement parts that benefit from a Ford Warranty.

The Ford Warranty may not cover damage caused to your vehicle as a result of failed non-Ford parts.

For additional information, refer to the terms and conditions of the Ford Warranty.

SPECIAL NOTICES

If converting or modifying your vehicle from production specification, refer to the Body and Equipment Mounting Manual at www.etis.ford.com/BEMM.

MOBILE COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Using mobile communications equipment is becoming increasingly important in the conduct of business and personal affairs. However, you must not compromise your own or others' safety when using such equipment. Mobile communications can enhance personal safety and security when appropriately used, particularly in emergency situations. Safety must be paramount when using mobile communications equipment to avoid negating these benefits. Mobile communication equipment includes, but is not limited to, cellular phones, pagers, portable email devices, text messaging devices and portable two-way radios.

Data Privacy



WARNING: Do not connect wireless plug-in devices to the data link connector. Unauthorized third parties could gain access to vehicle data and impair the performance of safety related systems. Only allow repair facilities that follow our service and repair instructions to connect their equipment to the data link connector.

We respect your privacy and are committed to protecting it. The information contained in this manual was correct at the time of publication, but as technology rapidly changes, we recommend that you visit the local Ford website for the latest information.

Your vehicle has electronic control units that have data recording functionality and the ability to permanently or temporarily store data. This data could include information on the condition and status of your vehicle, vehicle maintenance requirements, events and malfunctions. The types of data that can be recorded are described in this section. Some of the data recorded is stored in event logs or error logs.

Note: Error logs are reset following a service or repair.

Note: We may provide information in response to requests from law enforcement, other government authorities and third parties acting with lawful authority or through a legal process. Such information could be used by them in legal proceedings.

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Operating states of system components, for example fuel level, tire pressure and battery charge level.
- Vehicle and component status, for example wheel speed, deceleration, lateral acceleration and seatbelt status.

- Events or errors in essential systems, for example headlamps and brakes.
- System responses to driving situations, for example airbag deployment and stability control.
- Environmental conditions, for example temperature.

Some of this data, when used in combination with other information, for example an accident report, damage to a vehicle or eyewitness statements, could be associated with a specific person.

Services That We Provide

If you use our services, we collect and use data, for example account information, vehicle location and driving characteristics, that could identify you. We transmit this data through a dedicated, protected connection. We only collect and use data to enable your use of our services to which you have subscribed, with your consent or where permitted by law. For additional information, see the terms and conditions of the services to which you have subscribed.

For additional information about our privacy policy, refer to the local Ford website.

Services That Third Parties Provide

We recommend that you review the terms and conditions and data privacy information for any services equipped with your vehicle or to which you subscribe. We take no responsibility for services that third parties provide.

Data Privacy

SERVICE DATA

Our dealers collect service data through the data link connector in your vehicle. They use service data, for example error logs, to help them if you take your vehicle for repair. They share this data with our technical team, if required, to help with diagnosis. In addition to using the information for diagnosis and repair, we use and share service data with our service providers, for example parts suppliers, where required and where permitted by law, for continuous improvement or with other information that we have about you, for example your contact information, to offer you products and services that may be of interest to you according to your preferences and where allowed by law. Our service providers are equally required by law to protect your data and retain it in accordance with data retention policies.

Note: *Third party repair facilities can also collect service data through the data link connector.*

EVENT DATA

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder. The main purpose of an event data recorder is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle; this data will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The event data recorder is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less.

The event data recorder in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating.
- Whether or not the driver and passenger seatbelts were buckled/fastened.
- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or the brake pedal.
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.
- Where the driver was positioning the steering wheel.

This data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

Note: *Event data recorder data is recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data is recorded by the event data recorder under normal driving conditions and no personal data or information (for example name, gender, age, and crash location) is recorded. However, parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the event data recorder data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.*

To read data recorded by an event data recorder, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the event data recorder is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have such special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the event data recorder.

SETTINGS DATA

Your vehicle has electronic control units that have the ability to store data based on your personalized settings. The data is stored locally in the vehicle or on devices that you connect to it, for example, a USB drive or digital music player. You can delete some of this data and also choose whether to share it through the services to which you subscribe. See **Settings** (page 219).

Comfort and Convenience Data

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Seat and steering wheel position.
- Climate control settings.
- Radio presets.

Entertainment Data

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Music, videos or album art.
- Contacts and corresponding address book entries.
- Navigation destinations.

MOBILE DEVICE DATA - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 3

If you connect a mobile device to your vehicle, you can display data from your device on the touchscreen for example, music and album art. You can share your vehicle data with mobile apps on your device through the system. See **Apps** (page 253). See **Apps** (page 218).

The mobile apps function operates by your connected device sending data to us in the United States. The data is encrypted and includes, for example, the vehicle identification number of your vehicle, the SYNC module serial number, odometer, enabled apps, usage statistics and debugging information. We retain it only

as long as necessary to provide the service, to troubleshoot, for continuous improvement and to offer you products and services that may be of interest to you according to your preferences and where allowed by law.

If you connect a cell phone to the system, the system creates a profile that links to that cell phone. The cell phone profile enables more mobile features and efficient operation. The profile contains, for example data from your phonebook, read and unread text messages and call history, including history of calls when your cell phone was not connected to the system.

If you connect a media device, the system creates and retains a media device index of supported media content. The system also records a short diagnostic log of approximately 10 minutes of all recent system activity.

The cell phone profile, media device index and diagnostic log remain in your vehicle unless you delete them and are generally accessible only in your vehicle when you connect your cell phone or media device. If you no longer plan to use the system or your vehicle, we recommend you use the master reset function to erase the stored information. See **Settings** (page 219). See **Settings** (page 219).

System data cannot be accessed without special equipment and access to your vehicle's module.

For additional information about our privacy policy, refer to the local Ford website.

Note: To find out if your vehicle has connectivity technology, visit www.FordConnected.com.

EMERGENCY CALL SYSTEM DATA

When the emergency call system is active, it may disclose to emergency services that your vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or activation of the fuel pump shut-off. Certain versions or updates to the emergency call system may also be capable of electronically or verbally disclosing to emergency services operators your vehicle location or other details about your vehicle or crash to assist emergency services operators to provide the most appropriate emergency services. If you do not want to disclose this information, do not activate the emergency call system.

Note: *You cannot deactivate emergency call systems that are required by law.*

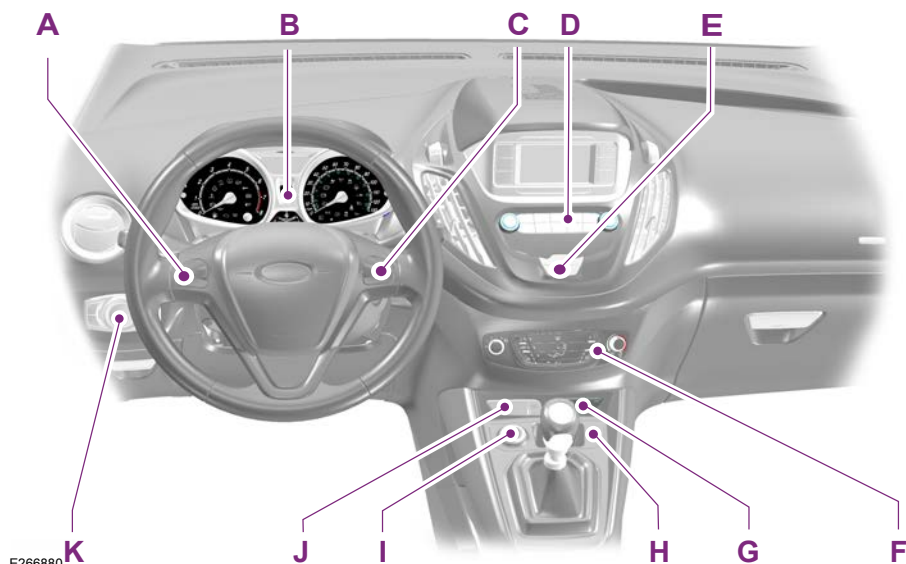
PROTECTING THE ENVIRONMENT

You can take significant steps toward protecting the environment with correct vehicle usage and the authorized disposal of waste, cleaning and lubrication materials.

For additional information about our sustainability progress and initiatives, visit www.sustainability.ford.com.

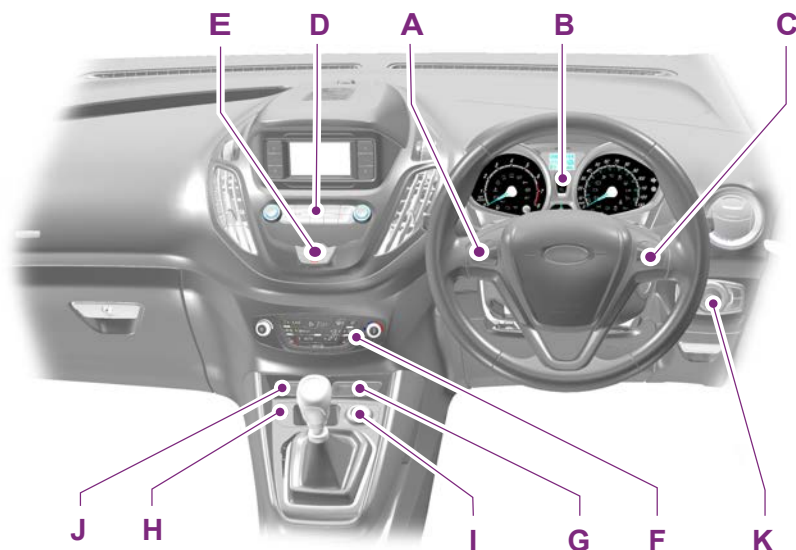
At a Glance

INSTRUMENT PANEL - LHD



- A Audio and voice control buttons. See **Steering Wheel** (page 48).
- B Instrument cluster. See **Instrument Cluster** (page 59).
- C Cruise control buttons. See **Using Cruise Control** (page 121).
- D Audio unit. See **Audio System** (page 202).
- E Hazard flasher switch. See **Hazard Flashers** (page 134). Power door locks. See **Locking and Unlocking** (page 41).
- F Climate control. See **Climate Control** (page 73).
- G Parking aid button. See **Parking Aids** (page 115). Auto-Start-Stop button. See **Auto-Start-Stop** (page 92). Tire pressure monitoring system reset button.
- H USB port. See **USB Port** (page 208).
- I Auxiliary power point. See **Auxiliary Power Points** (page 84).
- J Passenger airbag deactivation indicator. See **Side Airbags** (page 33). Traction control switch. See **Using Traction Control** (page 113).
- K Lighting control. See **Lighting Control** (page 52).

INSTRUMENT PANEL - RHD



E266881

- A Audio and voice control buttons. See **Steering Wheel** (page 48).
- B Instrument cluster. See **Instrument Cluster** (page 59).
- C Cruise control buttons. See **Using Cruise Control** (page 121).
- D Audio unit. See **Audio System** (page 202).
- E Hazard flasher switch. See **Hazard Flashers** (page 134). Power door locks. See **Locking and Unlocking** (page 41).
- F Climate control. See **Climate Control** (page 73).
- G Parking aid button. See **Parking Aids** (page 115). Auto-Start-Stop button. See **Auto-Start-Stop** (page 92). Tire pressure monitoring system reset button.
- H USB port. See **USB Port** (page 208).
- I Auxiliary power point. See **Auxiliary Power Points** (page 84).
- J Passenger airbag deactivation indicator. See **Side Airbags** (page 33). Traction control switch. See **Using Traction Control** (page 113).
- K Lighting control. See **Lighting Control** (page 52).

Child Safety

INSTALLING CHILD RESTRAINTS



WARNING: Extreme Hazard! Never use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an active airbag in front of it. Death or serious injury to the child can occur.

WARNING: You must switch the passenger airbag off when using a rearward facing child restraint on the front seat.

WARNING: You must switch the passenger airbag on following the removal of the child restraint.

WARNING: Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions when you are installing a child restraint.

WARNING: Do not modify child restraints in any way.

WARNING: Do not hold a child on your lap when your vehicle is moving.

WARNING: Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: If your vehicle has been involved in a crash, have the child restraints checked.

Only child restraints certified to ECE-R129 or ECE-R44.03 (or later) have been tested and approved for use in your vehicle. A choice of these are available from an authorized dealer.

Note: *Mandatory use of child restraints varies from country to country.*

When using a child restraint on a front seat, follow these seat positioning guidelines:

- The child restraint must not be in contact with the instrument panel.
- Position the passenger seat as far rearward as possible and route the seatbelt forward and downward from the B-pillar ring to the child restraint.
- If it proves difficult to tighten the lap section of the seatbelt without slack remaining, adjust the seat backrest to the fully upright position and raise the height of the seat.

Note: *When using a child restraint on a rear seat, adjust the front seat to a position to prevent contact with the child's feet or legs.*

Child Safety

Child Restraints for Different Mass Groups

Use the correct child restraint as follows:

Baby Safety Restraint (Group 0+)



Secure children that weigh less than 13 kg (29 lb) in a rearward facing baby safety restraint (Group 0+) on the rear seat.

Child Safety Restraint (Group 1)



Secure children that weigh between 13 kg (29 lb) and 18 kg (40 lb) in a child safety restraint (Group 1) on the rear seat.

Booster Seats

WARNING: Do not install a booster seat or a booster cushion with only the lap strap of the seatbelt.

WARNING: Do not install a booster seat or a booster cushion with a seatbelt that is slack or twisted.

WARNING: Do not put the shoulder section of the seatbelt or allow the child to put the shoulder section of the seatbelt under their arm or behind their back. Failure to follow this instruction could reduce the effectiveness of the seatbelt and increase the risk of injury or death in a crash.

WARNING: Do not use pillows, books or towels to boost your child's height. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: Make sure that your children sit in an upright position.

WARNING: Make sure the child restraint rests tightly against the vehicle seat. If necessary, adjust the seat backrest to an upright position. It may also be necessary to lift or remove the head restraint.

WARNING: You must reinstall the head restraint following the removal of the child restraint.

Child Safety

Booster Seat (Group 2)



Secure children that weigh greater than 15 kg (33 lb) but are less than 150 cm (60 in) tall in a booster seat or on a booster cushion.

We recommend that you use a booster seat that combines a cushion with a backrest instead of a booster cushion only. The raised seating position will allow you to position the shoulder strap of the adult seatbelt over the center of your child's shoulder and the lap strap tightly across their hips.

Booster Cushion (Group 3)



WARNING: When using a booster cushion, make sure you adjust the vehicle head restraint on that seating position.



Secure children that weigh greater than 22 kg (49 lb) but are less than 150 cm (60 in) tall on a booster cushion.

ISOFIX Anchor Points



WARNING: Use an anti-rotation device when using the ISOFIX system. We recommend the use of a top tether or support leg.

Your vehicle has ISOFIX anchor points that accommodate universally approved ISOFIX child restraints.

Always follow the manufacturer's instructions for installing a child restraint with a top tether.



The ISOFIX system has two rigid attachment arms on the child restraint. These attach to anchor points on the second row seats, where the cushion and backrest meet.

Note: If you are purchasing an ISOFIX child restraint, make sure that you know the correct mass group and ISOFIX size class for the intended seating locations. See **Child Restraint Positioning** (page 22).

Child Safety

Top Tether Anchor Points



E173021

For child restraints with a top tether, tether anchor points are on the back of the second row seats.

Attaching a Child Restraint With Top Tethers



WARNING: Do not attach the top tether strap to anything other than the correct top tether strap anchor point.



WARNING: Make sure that the top tether strap is not slack or twisted and is properly located on the anchor point.

1. Attach the tether strap to the anchor point.

Note: Where applicable, remove the luggage cover to ease installation. See **Installing and Removing the Rear Cargo Luggage Cover** (page 126).

Note: You may need to lift or remove the head restraint to ease installation. See **Head Restraints** (page 78).



2. Push the child restraint back firmly to engage the ISOFIX lower anchor points.
3. Tighten the tether strap in line with the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

Attaching a Child Restraint With a Support Leg



WARNING: If you use a child restraint that has a support leg, make sure the support leg rests securely on the floor.

Child Safety

WARNING: Always make sure your child is secured properly in a device that is appropriate for their height, age and weight. Child safety restraints must be bought separately from your vehicle. Failure to follow these instructions and guidelines may result in an increased risk of serious injury or death to your child.

WARNING: Make sure that the child restraint manufacturer lists your vehicle as suitable for use with this type of child restraint.



E185352

Always follow the manufacturer's instructions for installing a child restraint with a support leg.

CHILD RESTRAINT POSITIONING

WARNING: Extreme Hazard! Never use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an active airbag in front of it. Death or serious injury to the child can occur.

WARNING: If you use a child restraint that has a support leg, make sure the support leg rests securely on the floor.

WARNING: If you use a child restraint and a seatbelt, make sure that the seatbelt is not slack or twisted.

WARNING: Make sure the child restraint rests tightly against the vehicle seat. If necessary, adjust the seat backrest to an upright position. It may also be necessary to lift or remove the head restraint.

WARNING: You must reinstall the head restraint following the removal of the child restraint.

Child Safety

Vehicle Seating Positions	Mass Group Categories				
	0	0+	1	2	3
	0–10 kg (0–22 lb)	0–13 kg (0–29 lb)	9–18 kg (20–40 lb)	15–25 kg (33–55 lb)	22–36 kg (49–79 lb)
Front passenger seat with airbag ON .	X	X	UF ¹	UF ¹	UF ¹
Front passenger seat with airbag OFF .	U ¹	U ¹	U ¹	U ¹	U ¹
Fold flat front passenger seat with airbag ON .	X	X	UF ¹	UF ¹	UF ¹
Fold flat front passenger seat with airbag OFF .	U ¹	U ¹	U ¹	U ¹	U ¹
Rear seats. ²	U	U	U	U	U

¹ We recommend that you secure children in a government approved child restraint, on the rear seat.

² Do not use a child restraint with a support leg on the rear center seat unless stated as suitable in the child restraint manufacturer's product information.

X Not suitable for children in this mass group.

U Suitable for universal category child restraints approved for use in this mass group.

UF Suitable for universal category forward facing child restraints approved for use in this mass group.

Child Safety

ISOFIX Child Restraints

Seating Positions		Mass Group Categories				
		0	0	0+	1	1
		Lateral Facing	Rearward Facing	Rearward Facing	Forward Facing	Rearward Facing
		0–10 kg (0–22lb)	0–10 kg (0–22lb)	0–13 kg (0–29lb)	9–18 kg (20–40lb)	9–18 kg (20–40lb)
Front passenger seat.	Size class.	No ISOFIX				
	Fixture.					
	Size type.					
Rear outermost seat ISOFIX.	Size class.	X	E ¹	C, D, E ¹	A, B, B ¹	C, D ¹
	Fixture.	X	R1 ¹	R1, R2, R3 ¹	F2, F2X, F3 ¹	R2, R3 ¹
	Size type.	X	IL	IL	IL, IUF	IL
Rear center seat.	Size class.	No ISOFIX				
	Fixture.					
	Size type.					

¹The size class and fixture are defined for both universal and semi-universal child restraint systems. You can see the identification letters on ISOFIX child restraints.

IL Suitable for use with particular ISOFIX child restraint systems in the semi-universal category. Refer to the child restraint system manufacturer vehicle recommendation list for additional information.

IUF Suitable for use with forward facing ISOFIX child restraint systems in the universal category.

Child Safety

Recommended Child Restraints

Mass Group Categories	Manufacturer	Model	Attachment
0+ 0–13 kg (0–29 lb)	Britax Römer.	Baby Safe Plus with ISOFIX base. ¹	ISOFIX base or seatbelt only.
1 9–18 kg (20–40 lb)	Britax Römer.	Duo Plus. ¹	ISOFIX and top tether anchors or seatbelt only.
2 15–25 kg (33–55 lb)	Britax Römer.	KidFix. ^{1, 2}	ISOFIX and seatbelt or seatbelt only.
3 22–36 kg (49–79 lb)	Britax Römer.	KidFix. ^{1, 2}	ISOFIX and seatbelt or seatbelt only.

¹We recommend that you secure children using an ISOFIX child restraint on the rear outermost seats.

²We recommend that you use a booster seat that combines a cushion with a backrest instead of a booster cushion only.

See an authorized dealer for the latest details relating to our recommended child restraints.

i-Size Child Restraints

	Front Passenger Seat	Rear Outermost Seats	Rear Center Seat
Rearward facing child restraint systems on front passenger seat with airbag ON .	X	-	-
i-Size child restraint systems.	X	i-U	X
Suitable booster fixture.	B2, B3 ¹	B2, B3 ¹	B2, B3 ¹

¹ The fixture is defined for booster child restraint systems. You can see the identification letters on i-Size boosters.

i-U Suitable for use with forward and rearward facing i-Size child restraint systems.

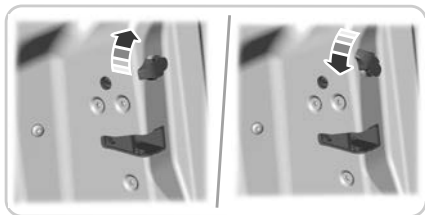
X Not suitable for use with i-Size child restraint systems.

Child Safety

CHILD SAFETY LOCKS



WARNING: You cannot open the rear doors from inside if you have put the child safety locks on.



E189148

A child safety lock is on the rear edge of each rear door. You must set the child safety lock separately on each door.

Left-Hand Side

Turn counterclockwise to lock and clockwise to unlock.

Right-Hand Side

Turn clockwise to lock and counterclockwise to unlock.

Seatbelts

FASTENING THE SEATBELTS



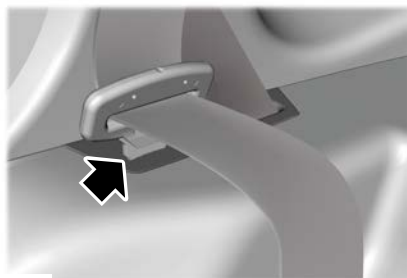
WARNING: Accessory seat covers not released by Ford Motor Company could prevent the seatbelt from retracting correctly. This could cause the seatbelt to become slack which could increase the risk of injuries in a crash.



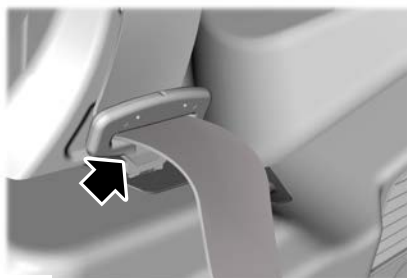
WARNING: Make sure that the seatbelts are securely stowed away when not in use and not outside your vehicle when closing the doors.



E174332



E176331



E176332

Note: When not in use, place the seatbelts into the slots on the outboard trim.

1. Pull the seatbelt out steadily.

Seatbelts

Note: It may lock if you pull it sharply or if your vehicle is on a slope.

2. Insert the tongue into the buckle.
3. Pull the seatbelt tight to remove any slack.

To release the seatbelt:

1. Press the red button on the buckle.
2. Hold the tongue and let the seatbelt retract to its stowed position.

Fastening the Detachable Seatbelt Anchor



E194532

The retractor for the rear center seatbelt is located in the roof.

1. Pull the seatbelt out steadily.

Note: It may lock if you pull it sharply or if the vehicle is on a slope.

2. Insert the smaller tongue into the black buckle to the left of the center seat.
3. Pull the larger tongue across the lap and insert it into the buckle to the right of the center seat.

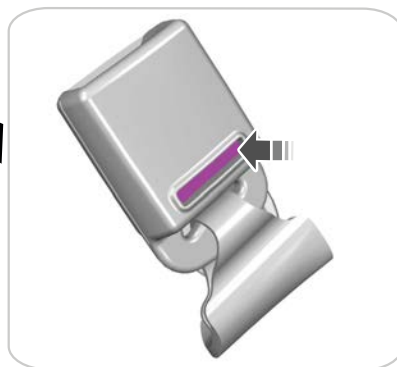
4. Pull the seatbelt tight to remove any slack.

Note: If in constant use, you can leave the seatbelt buckled in the black buckle. When it is not in use, or when you fold or move the rear seats, you should release the seatbelt from the black buckle.

Note: The rear outer seatbelts can lock if you return the seatback from a folded position to the upright position forcefully. Should the seatbelt lock, recline the seat using the recline adjustment.

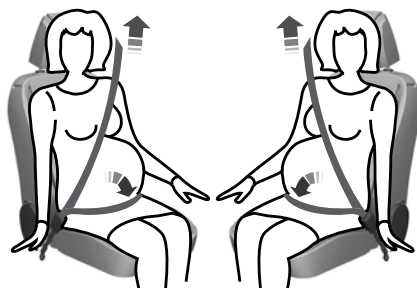
Seatbelts

Unfastening the Detachable Seatbelt Anchor



1. Press the button on the black buckle with a seatbelt tongue to release the seatbelt.
2. Hold the seatbelt tongue and let it retract completely and smoothly to its stowed position.

Using Seatbelts During Pregnancy



Seatbelts



WARNING: Position the seatbelt correctly for your safety and that of your unborn child. Do not use only the lap strap or the shoulder strap.

Pregnant women should always wear their seatbelt. The lap belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt should be positioned low across the hips below the belly and worn as tight as comfort will allow. The shoulder belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt should be positioned to cross the middle of the shoulder and the center of the chest.

SEATBELT REMINDER



WARNING: The system will only provide protection when you use the seatbelt correctly.

A warning lamp illuminates and an audible warning sounds when the following conditions have been met:

- The driver seat is occupied or the front seats are occupied.
- The front seatbelts have not been fastened.
- Your vehicle exceeds a relatively low speed.

It also illuminates when a front seatbelt is unfastened when your vehicle is moving.

If you do not fasten your seatbelt, the audible and visual warnings turn off after approximately five minutes.

Switching the Seatbelt Reminder Off

Contact an authorized dealer.

Seatbelt Monitor

A tick symbol displays confirming the seatbelt has been fastened.

An exclamation mark displays and a tone sounds if a seatbelt is unfastened.

Note: *If multiple seatbelts are unfastened within a few seconds of each other, only one tone sounds.*

Supplementary Restraints System

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

WARNING: Extreme Hazard! Never use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an active airbag in front of it. Death or serious injury to the child can occur.

WARNING: Do not modify the front of your vehicle in any way. This could adversely affect deployment of the airbags. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

WARNING: Wear a seatbelt and keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. Only when you use the seatbelt correctly, can it hold you in a position that allows the airbag to achieve its optimum effect. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

WARNING: Repairs to the steering wheel, steering column, seats, airbags and seatbelts must be carried out by an authorized dealer. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

WARNING: Keep the areas in front of the airbags free from obstruction. Do not affix anything to or over the airbag covers. Objects could become projectiles during airbag deployment. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

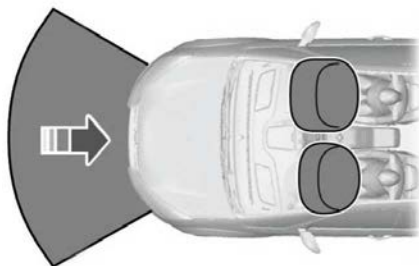
WARNING: Do not poke sharp objects into areas where airbags are fitted. This could damage and adversely affect deployment of the airbags. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: Accessory seat covers not released by Ford Motor Company could prevent the deployment of the airbags and increase the risk of injuries in a crash.

Note: A loud bang sounds and there is a cloud of harmless powdery residue if an airbag deploys. This is normal.

For routine cleaning, wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth.

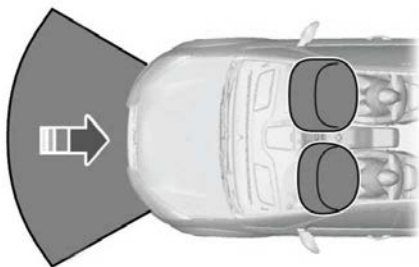
DRIVER AIRBAG



The airbag is designed to deploy during a significant frontal or near-frontal crash. The airbag inflates within a few thousandths of a second cushioning forward body movement and deflates on contact with the occupant. The airbag is not designed to deploy during a minor frontal crash, rear crash, side crash or a vehicle rollover.

Supplementary Restraints System

PASSENGER AIRBAG



The airbag is designed to deploy during a significant frontal or near-frontal crash. The airbag inflates within a few thousandths of a second cushioning forward body movement and deflates on contact with the occupant. The airbag is not designed to deploy during a minor frontal crash, rear crash, side crash or a vehicle rollover.

SWITCHING THE PASSENGER AIRBAG ON AND OFF



The switch is on the end of the instrument panel on the passenger side of your vehicle. The passenger airbag deactivation indicator is near the climate controls.

Switching the Passenger Airbag Off

WARNING: You must switch the passenger airbag off when using a rearward facing child restraint on the front seat.

1. Insert the key blade into the switch.



E249662

2. Turn the key to the **OFF** position.
3. When you switch the ignition on, check that the passenger airbag deactivation **OFF** indicator illuminates. If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Switching the Passenger Airbag On

WARNING: You must switch the passenger airbag on following the removal of the child restraint.

1. Insert the key blade into the switch.

Supplementary Restraints System



E249648

2. Turn the key to the **ON** position.
3. When you switch the ignition on, check that the passenger airbag deactivation **ON** indicator illuminates. If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

SIDE AIRBAGS

WARNING: Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the headliner at the siderail that may come into contact with a deploying curtain airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.

WARNING: Do not lean your head on the door. The side airbag could injure you as it deploys from the side of the seatback.

WARNING: Accessory seat covers not released by Ford Motor Company could prevent the deployment of the airbags and increase the risk of injuries in a crash.

WARNING: Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the supplementary restraint system or associated components. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: If a supplementary restraint system component has deployed, it will not function again. Have the system and associated components inspected as soon as possible. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



The side airbags are on the outermost side of each front seat backrest. There is a label attached to the side of each backrest to indicate this.

Supplementary Restraints System



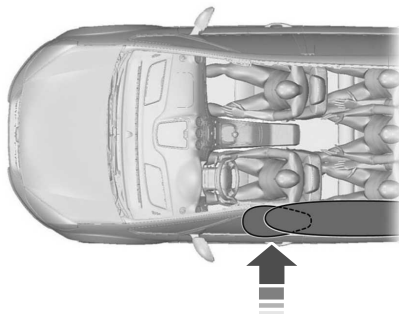
SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAGS



WARNING: Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the headliner at the siderail that may come into contact with a deploying curtain airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.

The side airbags are designed to inflate between the door panel and the occupant to enhance the protection in certain crashes.

The airbag is designed to deploy during a significant lateral crash. It might also deploy during a significant frontal crash. The airbag is not designed to deploy during a minor lateral or frontal crash, rear crash or a vehicle rollover.



DRIVER KNEE AIRBAG



WARNING: Do not attempt to open the airbag cover.

The airbag will deploy during significant frontal and near frontal collisions that are up to 30 degrees from the left or the right. The airbag will inflate within a few thousandths of a second and deflate on contact with the occupants, thus providing a cushion between the driver's knees and the steering column. During overturns, rear collisions and side collisions, the knee airbag will not deploy.

Note: The airbag has a lower deployment threshold than the front airbags. During a minor collision, it is possible that only the knee airbag will deploy.

The airbags are above the front and rear side windows.

The airbag is designed to deploy during a significant lateral or frontal angled crash. The airbag is not designed to deploy during a minor lateral and frontal crash, rear crash or a vehicle rollover.

Emergency Assistance

WHAT IS EMERGENCY ASSISTANCE

Emergency Assistance Privacy Notice

When you switch on Emergency Assistance, it may disclose to emergency services that your vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or activation of the fuel pump shut off. This feature has the capability to disclose your location information to the emergency operator or other details about your vehicle or crash to provide the most appropriate emergency services.

If you do not want to disclose this information, do not switch on the feature.

During a call:

- Emergency Assistance uses your vehicle GPS or cellular network information when available to determine the most appropriate language to use. It alerts the emergency operator of the crash and delivers the introductory message. This may include your vehicle GPS coordinates.
- The language the system uses to interact with the occupants of your vehicle may differ from the language used to deliver information to the emergency operator.
- After the delivery of the introductory message the voice line opens so that you can speak hands-free with the emergency operator.
- When the line is connected, you must be prepared to provide your name, phone number and location information immediately.

Note: While the system provides information to the emergency operator, the system plays a message letting you know it is sending important information. It then lets you know when the line is open to start hands-free communication.

Note: During an Emergency Assistance call, an emergency priority screen appears which contains vehicle GPS coordinates when available.

Note: It is possible that GPS location information is not available at the time of the crash; in this case, Emergency Assistance will still attempt to place an emergency call.

Note: It is possible that the emergency services will not receive the GPS coordinates; in this case, hands-free communication with an emergency operator is available.

Note: The emergency operator may also receive information from the cellular network such as cell phone number, cell phone location and cell phone carrier name independent from Emergency Assistance.

Note: Before setting the feature on, please read the important notice about the Emergency Assistance feature for important information.

Note: In the case of an emergency, the system, as a means of communication aid, can help you contact specific rescue departments of public emergency services. The system does not deploy the rescue operations. The local public emergency service deploys specific rescue operations according to the actual situation.

Emergency Assistance

EMERGENCY CALL REQUIREMENTS



WARNING: Unless the Emergency Assistance setting is on prior to a collision, the system does not attempt to place an emergency call. This could delay the response time, increasing the risk of serious injury or death.



WARNING: For this feature to work, your mobile phone must be Bluetooth-enabled and compatible with the system.



WARNING: Always place your phone in a secure location in your vehicle so it does not become a projectile or get damaged in a crash. Failure to do so may cause serious injury to someone or damage the phone which could prevent Emergency Assistance from working properly.

To make sure that Emergency Assistance works correctly:

- The system must have power and be working correctly at the time of the crash and during feature activation and use.
- You must switch on the feature before a crash.
- You must have a cell phone connected to the system.
- In certain countries, it may be necessary to have a valid and registered SIM card with credit in order to place and maintain an emergency call.
- A connected cell phone must have the ability to make and maintain an outgoing call at the time of the crash.

- A connected cell phone must have adequate network coverage, battery power and signal strength.
- Your vehicle must have battery power.

Note: *Not all accidents activate the system. If an accident does trigger the system, it initiates a call to the emergency services. Do not wait for the system to initiate a call if you are able to do so. Call emergency services immediately to avoid a delayed response time. If you do not hear the system within five seconds of the accident, the system could be non-functional.*

If an accident results in an attempt to deploy an airbag, excluding knee airbags and rear inflatable seatbelts, or to shut off the fuel pump, the system initiates a call to the emergency services.

Note: *When you switch Emergency Assistance on or off, the settings apply to all paired mobile phones. If you switch Emergency Assistance off and a previously paired phone connects when you switch the ignition on, either a voice message plays, a display message or icon is shown or both.*

Before making a call:

- If you do not cancel the call, an introductory message plays for the emergency operator. After this message, there is hands-free communication between your vehicle's occupants and the operator.
- The system provides a short window of time (approximately 10 seconds) to cancel the call. If you do not cancel the call, the system initiates a call to the emergency services.
- The system plays a message letting you know when it attempts to make an emergency call. You can cancel the call by selecting the relevant button or by pressing the end call button on the steering wheel.

Emergency Assistance

Note: *Not every crash deploys an airbag or triggers the fuel pump shut off, which may turn on Emergency Assistance. However, if Emergency Assistance is triggered, the system tries to contact the emergency services. If a connected cell phone sustains damage or loses connection to the system, it searches for and tries to connect to any available previously paired cell phone and initiates a call to the emergency services.*

EMERGENCY CALL LIMITATIONS

Emergency Assistance may not work if:

- Your cell phone or Emergency Assistance hardware sustains damage in the crash.
- The vehicle battery or the system has no power.
- A crash ejects your cell phone from your vehicle.
- You do not have a valid and registered SIM card with credit in your cell phone.
- You are in a country where Emergency Assistance cannot call the local emergency services. For additional information, please refer to the local Ford website.

Note: *This feature only works in a country where Emergency Assistance can call the local emergency services. For additional information, please refer to the local Ford website.*

Note: *Every mobile phone operates differently. While Emergency Assistance works with most mobile phones, some mobile phones may experience difficulties using this feature.*

Emergency Assistance does not currently call emergency services in the following countries:

- Albania.
- Armenia.
- Azerbaijan.
- Belarus.
- Bosnia and Herzegovina.
- Georgia.
- Macedonia.
- Moldova.
- Netherlands.
- Russia.
- Ukraine.

Keys and Remote Controls

GENERAL INFORMATION ON RADIO FREQUENCIES

Note: *Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.*

The typical operating range for your transmitter is approximately 10 m (33 ft).

A decrease in operating range could be caused by:

- weather conditions
- nearby radio towers
- structures around your vehicle
- other vehicles parked next to your vehicle.

The radio frequency used by your remote control can also be used by other radio transmitters, for example amateur radios, medical equipment, wireless headphones, wireless remote controls, cell phones, battery chargers and alarm systems. If the frequencies are jammed, you will not be able to use your remote control. You can lock and unlock the doors with the key.

Note: *Make sure your vehicle is locked before leaving it unattended.*

Note: *If you are in range, the remote control will operate if you press any button unintentionally.*

Note: *The remote control contains sensitive electrical components. Exposure to moisture or impact may cause permanent damage.*

REMOTE CONTROL

You can program a maximum of eight remote controls to your vehicle. This includes any that were supplied with your vehicle. See an authorized dealer.

Changing the Remote Control Battery



WARNING: Keep batteries away from children to prevent ingestion. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death. If ingested, immediately seek medical attention.



WARNING: If the battery compartment does not securely close, stop using the remote control and replace it as soon as possible. In the meantime, keep the remote control away from children. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority regarding recycling.

Reprogramming the Unlocking Function

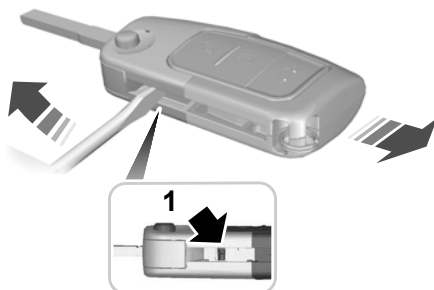
Note: *When you press the unlock button either all the doors are unlocked or only the passenger doors are unlocked. Pressing the unlock button again unlocks all the doors.*

Press and hold the unlock and lock buttons on the remote control simultaneously for at least four seconds with the ignition off. The direction indicators will flash twice to confirm the change.

To return to the original unlocking function, repeat the process.

Keys and Remote Controls

Remote Control With a Folding Key Blade



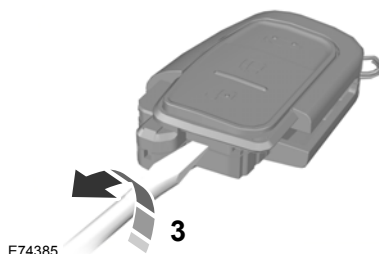
E74383

1. Insert a screwdriver as far as possible into the slot on the side of the remote control, push it toward the key blade and remove the key blade.



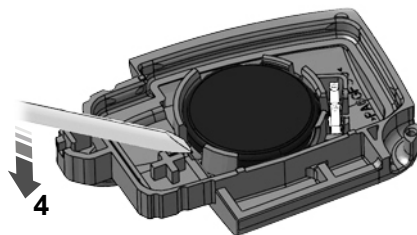
E74384

2. Twist the screwdriver in the position shown to start separating the two halves of the remote control.



E74385

3. Twist the screwdriver in the position shown to separate the two halves of the remote control.



E126280

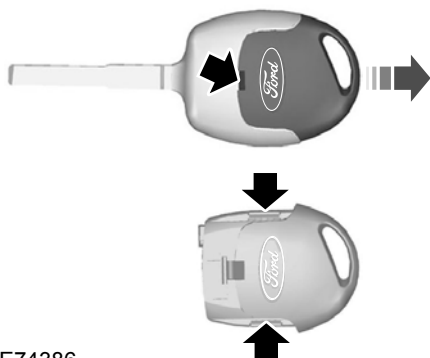
Note: Do not touch the battery contacts or the printed circuit board with the screwdriver.

4. Carefully remove the battery with the screwdriver.
5. Install a new battery (3V CR 2032) with the + facing downwards.
6. Assemble the two halves of the remote control.
7. Install the key blade.

Keys and Remote Controls

Remote Key with Fixed Blade

To re-program the passive anti-theft system see an authorized dealer.



E74386

1. Insert a screwdriver into the recess on the back of the key and remove the key blade.
2. Release the retaining clips with the screwdriver and separate the two halves of the remote control.

Note: Do not touch the battery contacts or the printed circuit board with the screwdriver.

3. Carefully prise out the battery with the screwdriver.
4. Install a new battery (3V CR 2032) with the + facing upwards.
5. Assemble the two halves of the remote control.
6. Install the key blade.

REPLACING A LOST KEY OR REMOTE CONTROL

You can purchase replacement keys or remote controls from an authorized dealer. Authorized dealers can program remote controls for your vehicle. See **Remote Control** (page 38).

Doors and Locks

LOCKING AND UNLOCKING

Remote Control

Unlocking the Doors



Press the button to unlock all doors. One long flash of the direction indicators confirms that your vehicle has unlocked.

Note: You can unlock the driver door with the key. Use the key if the remote control does not operate.

Note: If you leave your vehicle unattended for several weeks, the remote control turns off. Unlocking and starting your vehicle enables the remote control.

Central Locking



Press the button to lock all doors. One short flash of the direction indicators confirms that your vehicle has locked.

Note: You can lock the driver door with the key. Use the key if the remote control does not operate.

Note: Do not use the door latch assembly to attach any accessory, such as handles or steps, as this can cause damage to your vehicle.

Double Locking the Doors



WARNING: Do not use double locking when passengers or animals are inside your vehicle. The doors cannot be unlocked or opened from the inside when double locked.

Double locking is a theft protection feature that prevents someone from opening the doors from the inside.



Press the button twice within three seconds. Three short flashes of the direction indicators confirms that your vehicle has double locked.

If you double lock your vehicle when inside, switch the ignition on to return the door locks to a single locked state.

Locking and Unlocking the Doors From Inside



Press the power door lock control on the instrument panel to lock or unlock all the doors and the liftgate.

Locking and Unlocking the Doors with the Key Blade

Locking the Doors

Turn the top of the key toward the front of your vehicle.

Double Locking the Doors

Turn the top of the key toward the front of your vehicle twice within three seconds.

Unlocking the Doors

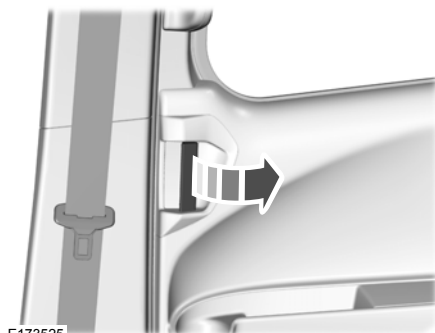
Turn the top of the key toward the rear of your vehicle.

Reprogramming the Unlocking Function

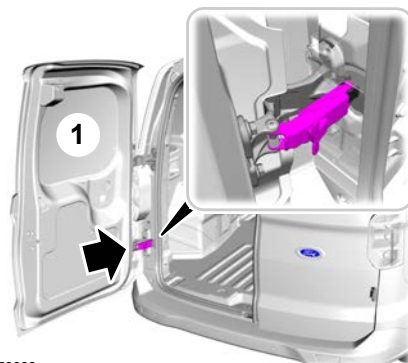
See **Remote Control** (page 38).

Doors and Locks

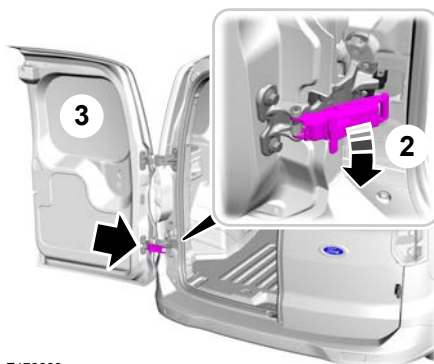
Opening the Sliding Door From Inside



Opening the Double Rear Doors (if Equipped)

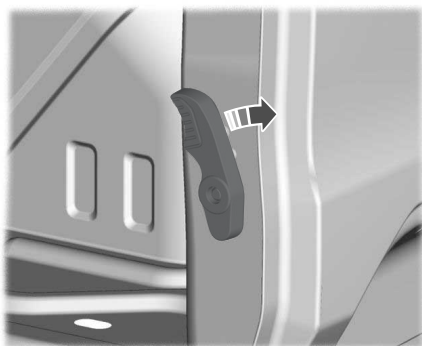


1. Open the rear cargo door.



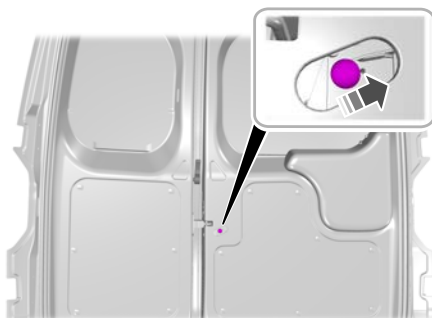
2. Pull the lever to release the catch.
3. Fully open the cargo door.

Doors and Locks



E291058

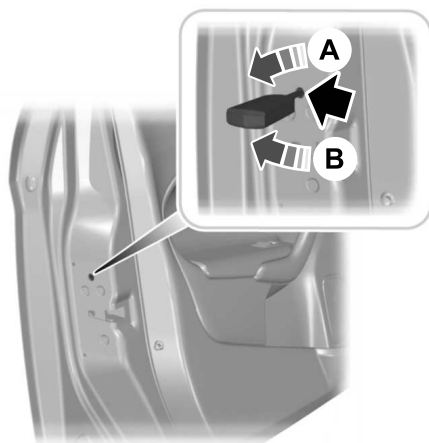
Rear Emergency Exit



E291038

Pull the interior handle up to open the door in an emergency.

Locking the Doors Individually with the Key Blade



If the central locking function does not operate, lock the doors individually using the key in the position shown.

Left-Hand Side

Turn clockwise to lock.

Right-Hand Side

Turn counterclockwise to lock.

Autolock

Contact an authorized dealer.

Auto Relock

The doors automatically relock if you do not open a door within 45 seconds of unlocking the doors with the remote control. The door locks and the alarm return to their previous state.

Doors and Locks

Unlocking the Doors (One-Stage Unlock)

All doors unlock when you do any of the following:

- Pull the driver door interior handle if you have not double locked the doors.
- Turn the key in the door lock toward the rear of your vehicle.
- Press the unlock button on the remote control once.
- Press the interior unlock button once.

Note: *When you have double locked your vehicle, the interior unlock button only operates for approximately 11 seconds.*

Two-Stage Unlocking

The front doors unlock when you do any of the following:

- Pull the driver door interior handle if you have not double locked the doors.
- Turn the key in the door lock toward the rear of your vehicle.
- Press the unlock button on the remote control once.
- Press the interior unlock button once.

Note: *When you have double locked your vehicle, the interior unlock button only operates for approximately 11 seconds.*

The front doors and cargo area unlock when you do any of the following:

- Turn the key in the door lock toward the rear of your vehicle twice within three seconds.
- Press the unlock button on the remote control twice within three seconds.
- Press the interior unlock button twice within three seconds.

Configurable Unlocking

Configurable unlocking is set at the time of vehicle purchase. It allows you to select which doors unlock when you press the unlock button or the luggage compartment unlock button on the remote control once or twice. You cannot turn this feature back on if you have had it turned off. Contact an authorized dealer for further information.

Liftgate

MANUAL LIFTGATE



WARNING: It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seatbelts. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and properly using a seatbelt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.



WARNING: Make sure to close and latch the liftgate to prevent drawing exhaust fumes into your vehicle. This will also prevent passengers and cargo from falling out. If you must drive with the liftgate open, keep the vents or windows open so outside air comes into your vehicle. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

Note: Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.

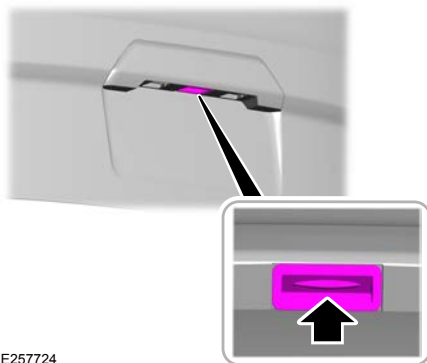
Note: Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

Unlocking the Liftgate



Press the button on the remote control.

Opening the Liftgate



E257724

Press the exterior release button hidden above the license plate.

Closing the Liftgate

Pull the strap inside the liftgate to help with closing.

PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

Principle of Operation

The system prevents someone from starting the engine with an incorrectly coded key.

Note: Always take your keys and lock all doors when leaving your vehicle.

Coded Keys

If you lose a key, you can obtain a replacement from an authorized dealer. If possible, provide them with the key number from the tag provided with the original keys. You can also obtain extra keys from an authorized dealer.

Note: Have all of your remaining keys erased and recoded if you lose a key. Have replacement keys coded together with recoding your remaining keys. Ask an authorized dealer for more information.

Note: Metallic objects, electronic devices or a second coded key on the same key chain may result in vehicle starting problems, especially if they are too close to the key when starting your vehicle.

Arming the Engine Immobilizer

The engine immobilizer arms after a short period of time when you switch the ignition off.

Disarming the Engine Immobilizer

The engine immobilizer disarms when you switch the ignition on with a correctly coded key.

If you are unable to start your vehicle with a correctly coded key, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

ANTI-THEFT ALARM

Alarm System

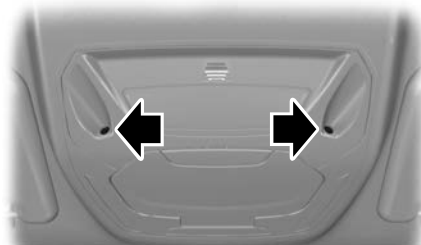
Your vehicle may have one of the following alarm systems:

- Category one alarm with interior sensors and battery back-up sounder.
- Perimeter alarm.

Perimeter Alarm

The perimeter alarm is a deterrent against unauthorized access to your vehicle through the doors, luggage compartment and the hood.

Interior Sensors



E131656

The interior sensors are in the overhead console.

When you lock your vehicle and arm the alarm, the sensors are designed to detect any movement inside your vehicle.

Note: Do not cover the interior sensors.

Note: If your vehicle has a mesh bulkhead or no bulkhead, the sensors scan the complete interior. If your vehicle has any other type of bulkhead, the sensors only scan the cabin area.

Security

Battery Back-up Sounder

The battery back-up sounder is an additional alarm system that has its own battery and sounds a siren if the vehicle battery or the battery back-up sounder is disconnected. The system arms when you lock your vehicle.

Triggering the Alarm

When armed, the alarm is triggered in any of the following ways:

- If someone opens a door, the liftgate or the hood without a valid key or remote control.
- If someone removes the navigation system or certain types of audio system.
- If you switch your vehicle on without a correctly coded key.
- If the interior sensors detect movement inside your vehicle.
- On vehicles with a battery back-up sounder, if someone disconnects the vehicle battery or the battery back-up sounder.

If the alarm is triggered, the alarm horn sounds for 30 seconds and the hazard flasher flashes for 5 minutes.

Any further attempts to carry out one of the above sounds the alarm again.

Full Guard and Reduced Guard

Full Guard

Full guard is the standard setting.

In full guard, the interior sensors are on when you arm the alarm.

Do not arm the alarm with full guard if passengers, animals or other moving objects are inside your vehicle.

Reduced Guard

In reduced guard, the interior sensors are off when you arm the alarm.

Selecting Full or Reduced Guard

Full guard is the standard setting and it is armed by locking the vehicle using the remote control and there is not a key in the ignition.

Note: *Do not arm the alarm with full guard if passengers, animals or other moving objects are inside your vehicle, as this could trigger the alarm.*

In reduced guard, the interior sensors are off and the perimeter sensors are on when you arm the alarm by locking the vehicle using the driver door cylinder and there is not a key in the ignition.

Note: *The alarm resets to full guard the next time you unlock and then relock the vehicle with the remote control.*

Arming the Alarm

The alarm arms when you lock your vehicle. See **Doors and Locks** (page 41).

Disarming the Alarm

Perimeter Alarm

Disarm and silence the alarm by unlocking the doors with the key and switching the ignition on with a correctly coded key or unlocking the doors with the remote control.

Category One Alarm

Disarm and silence the alarm by unlocking the doors with the key and switching the ignition on with a correctly coded key within 12 seconds or unlocking the doors with the remote control.

Steering Wheel

ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL



WARNING: Do not adjust the steering wheel when your vehicle is moving.

Note: Make sure that you are sitting in the correct position. See **Sitting in the Correct Position** (page 78).



E95178

1. Unlock the steering column.
2. Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position.



E95179

3. Lock the steering column.

Wipers and Washers

WINDSHIELD WIPERS

Note: Fully defrost the windshield before you switch the windshield wipers on.

Note: Make sure you switch the windshield wipers off before entering a car wash.

Note: If you use a car wash with a waxing cycle, make sure that you remove the wax from the windshield and the wiper blades.

Note: If streaks or smears appear on the windshield, clean the windshield and the wiper blades. See **Checking the Wiper Blades** (page 159).

If that does not resolve the issue, install new wiper blades. See **Changing the Front Wiper Blades** (page 159).

Note: Do not operate the wipers on a dry windshield. This may scratch the glass, damage the wiper blades or cause the wiper motor to burn out. Always use the windshield washers before wiping a dry windshield.

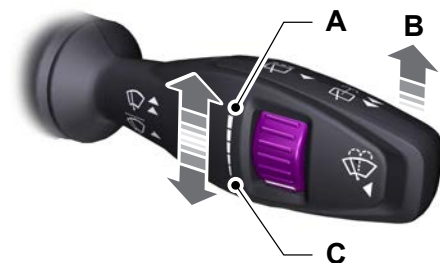


E102032

- A Single wipe
- B Intermittent wipe
- C Normal wipe
- D High speed wipe

Note: If you press and hold the wiper lever in position A, the wipers will continue to wipe until you release the wiper lever.

Intermittent Wipe



E102033

- A Short wipe interval
- B Intermittent wipe
- C Long wipe interval

Use the rotary control to adjust the intermittent wipe interval.

Speed Dependent Wipers (If Equipped)

When your vehicle speed increases, the interval between wipes decreases.

AUTOWIPERS

Note: Fully defrost the windshield before you switch the windshield wipers on.

Note: Make sure you switch the windshield wipers off before entering a car wash.

Note: If streaks or smears appear on the windshield, clean the windshield and the wiper blades.

If that does not resolve the issue, install new wiper blades.

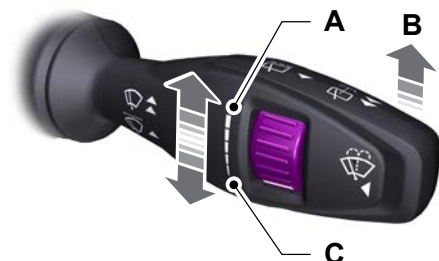
Wipers and Washers

Note: If you switch autolamps and autowipers on, the headlamps will automatically turn on when the windshield wipers continuously operate.

Wet or winter driving conditions with ice, snow or salty road mist can cause inconsistent and unexpected wiping or smearing.

In these conditions, you can do the following to help keep your windshield clear:

- Lower the sensitivity of the autowipers.
- Change the wiper speed to normal or high speed wipe as necessary.
- Switch the autowipers off.



E102033

- A Maximum autowipe
- B On
- C Minimum autowipe

The wipers will function when water is detected on the windshield. The rain sensor will continue to monitor the amount of water on the windshield and adjust the speed of the wipers automatically. This feature can be switched on or off in the information display. See **General Information** (page 65).

Note: When you switch this feature off, the wipers will return to the variable intermittent setting based on the sensitivity you have set.

Use the rotary control to adjust the sensitivity of the rain sensor. On minimum autowipe, the wipers will operate when the sensor detects a large amount of water on the windshield. On maximum autowipe, the wipers will operate when the sensor detects a small amount of water on the windshield.

Keep the outside of the windshield clean. Sensor performance will be affected if the area around the interior mirror is dirty. The rain sensor is very sensitive and the wipers may operate if dirt, mist or insects hit the windshield.

WINDSHIELD WASHERS

Note: Do not operate the washers when the washer reservoir is empty. This may cause the washer pump to overheat.



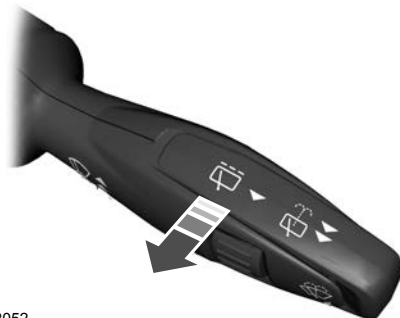
E102051

Push the button to operate the washers. When you release the button, the wipers will operate for a short time.

Wipers and Washers

REAR WINDOW WIPER AND WASHERS

Intermittent Wipe



E102052

Pull the lever toward you.

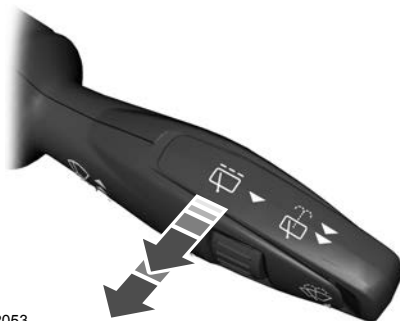
Reverse Gear Wipe

The rear wiper will turn on automatically when selecting reverse gear if:

- the rear wiper is not already switched on
- the wiper lever is in position A, B, C or D
- the front wiper is operating (when set to position B).

Rear Window Washer

Note: Do not operate the washers when the washer reservoir is empty. This may cause the washer pump to overheat.



E102053

Pull the lever toward you to operate the washers. They will operate for a maximum of 10 seconds. When you release the lever, the wiper will operate for a short time.

GENERAL INFORMATION

Condensation in the Exterior Front Lamps and Rear Lamps

Exterior front lamps and rear lamps have vents to accommodate normal changes in air pressure.

Condensation can be a natural by-product of this design. When moist air enters the lamp assembly through the vents, there is a possibility that condensation can occur when the temperature is cold. When normal condensation occurs, a fine mist can form on the interior of the lens. The fine mist eventually clears and exits through the vents during normal operation.

Clearing time may take as long as 48 hours under dry weather conditions.

Examples of acceptable condensation are:

- The presence of a fine mist (no streaks, drip marks or large droplets).
- A fine mist covers less than 50% of the lens.

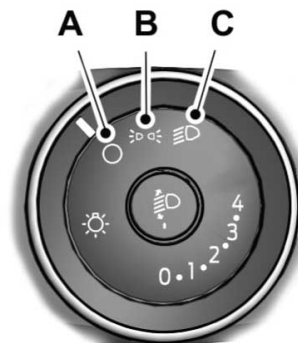
Examples of unacceptable condensation are:

- A water puddle inside the lamp.
- Streaks, drip marks or large droplets present on the interior of the lens.

If you see any unacceptable condensation, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

LIGHTING CONTROL

Lighting Control Positions



E132706

- | | |
|---|---|
| A | Off |
| B | Parking lamps, instrument panel lamps, license plate lamps and tail lamps |
| C | Headlamps |

Parking Lamps

Note: Prolonged use of the parking lamps will cause the battery to run out of charge.

Switch the ignition off.

Turn the lighting control to position B.

Lighting

High Beams



E101829

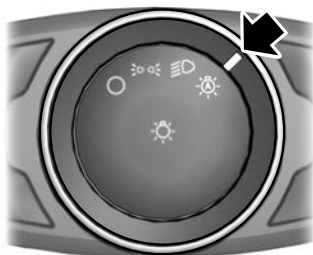
Pull the lever fully toward you to switch the high beams on.

Push the lever forward to switch the high beams off.

Headlamp Flasher

Pull the lever toward you slightly and release it to flash the headlamps.

AUTOLAMPS



E142451

The headlamps will automatically turn on and off in low light situations or during inclement weather.

Note: You may have to manually switch the headlamps on in severe weather conditions.

Note: If you switch autolamps on, you can only switch the high beam headlamps on once autolamps has turned the headlamps on.

Note: If you switch autolamps and autowipers on, the headlamps will automatically turn on when the windshield wipers continuously operate.

INSTRUMENT LIGHTING DIMMER

The instrument lighting dimmer buttons are on the lighting control.



Repeatedly press one of the buttons to adjust the brightness.

HEADLAMP EXIT DELAY

After you switch the ignition off, you can switch the headlamps on by pulling the direction indicator lever toward you. You will hear a short tone. The headlamps will switch off automatically after three minutes with any door open or 30 seconds after the last door has been closed. You can cancel this feature by pulling the direction indicator lever toward you again or switching the ignition on.

FRONT FOG LAMPS

Switching the Front Fog Lamps On or Off

Only switch the front fog lamps on during reduced visibility.

Lighting

You can switch the front fog lamps on if any of the following occur:

- You set the lighting control to the parking lamps position.
- You set the lighting control to the headlamps position.
- You set the lighting control to the autolamps position and the headlamps are on.

The front fog lamp button is on the lighting control.



Press the button to switch the front fog lamps on or off.

Note: The brightness of the daytime running lamps may decrease when the front fog lamps are switched on.

Front Fog Lamp Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the front fog lamps on.

REAR FOG LAMPS

Switching the Rear Fog Lamps On or Off



WARNING: Do not use the rear fog lamps when it is raining or snowing and visibility is more than 50 m (164.0 ft).

You can switch the rear fog lamps on if any of the following occur:

- You switched the front fog lamps on.
- You set the lighting control to the headlamps position.
- You set the lighting control to the autolamps position and the headlamps are on.

The rear fog lamp button is on the lighting control.



Press the button to switch the rear fog lamps on or off.

Rear Fog Lamp Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the rear fog lamps on.

HEADLAMP LEVELING

To adjust the level of the headlamp beams, do the following:



E132711

1. Press to release the control.
2. Rotate the control in accordance with your vehicle load to prevent you from distracting other road users when the headlamps are on.

Note: Set the control to zero when your vehicle is unloaded.

Note: Set the headlamp beams to give between 35–100 m (115–328 ft) of road surface illumination when your vehicle is partially or fully loaded.

3. Press to close the control.

DIRECTION INDICATORS



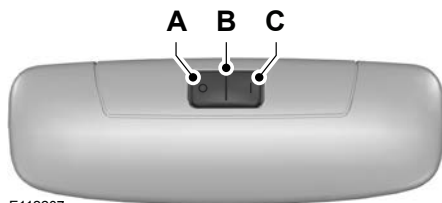
E102016

Push the lever up or down to use the direction indicators.

Note: Tap the lever up or down to make the direction indicators flash three times to indicate a lane change.

INTERIOR LAMPS

Courtesy Lamp



E112207

- A Off
- B Door contact
- C On

If you set the switch to position B, the courtesy lamp will switch on when you unlock your vehicle, open a door or the liftgate. If you leave a door open with the ignition switched off, the courtesy lamp will switch off automatically after a short period of time to prevent your vehicle battery from losing charge. To switch it back on, switch the ignition on for a short period of time.

The courtesy lamp will also switch on when you switch the ignition off. It will switch off automatically after a short period of time or when you start the engine.

If you set the switch to position C with the ignition switched off, the courtesy lamp will switch on. It will switch off automatically after a short period of time to prevent your vehicle battery from losing charge. To switch it back on, switch the ignition on for a short period of time.

Reading Lamps



E112208

If you switch the ignition off, the reading lamps will switch off automatically after a short period of time to prevent your vehicle battery from losing charge. To switch them back on, switch the ignition on for a short period of time.

Windows and Mirrors

POWER WINDOWS - VEHICLES WITH: ONE-TOUCH OPEN DRIVER WINDOW



WARNING: Do not leave children unattended in your vehicle and do not let them play with the power windows. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: When closing the power windows, verify they are free of obstruction and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings.



Press the control to open the window. Lift the control to close the window.

To reduce wind noise or pulsing noise when one window is open, slightly open the opposite window.

One-Touch Open

Fully press the control and release it. Press again or lift it to stop the window.

POWER WINDOWS - VEHICLES WITH: ONE-TOUCH OPEN AND CLOSE FRONT WINDOWS



WARNING: Do not leave children unattended in your vehicle and do not let them play with the power windows. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: When closing the power windows, verify they are free of obstruction and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings.



Press the control to open the window. Lift the control to close the window.

To reduce wind noise or pulsing noise when one window is open, slightly open the opposite window.

One-Touch Open

Fully press the control and release it. Press again or lift it to stop the window.

One-Touch Close

Fully lift the control and release it. Press again or lift it to stop the window.

Bounce-Back

The window stops and reverses if it detects an obstruction.

Note: *If you disconnect the battery, you must reset the bounce-back.*

Overriding Bounce-Back



WARNING: If you override bounce-back, the window does not reverse if it detects an obstacle. Take care when closing the windows to avoid personal injury or damage to your vehicle.

1. Close the window twice until it reaches the point of resistance and let it reverse.

Windows and Mirrors

2. Close the window a third time to the point of resistance. Bounce-back is now disabled and you can close the window manually.
3. The window goes past the point of resistance and you can fully close it.

Note: If the window does not close, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Resetting Bounce-Back

1. Lift and hold the switch until the window is fully closed.
2. Release the switch.
3. Lift and hold the switch again for a few seconds.
4. Release the switch.
5. Lift and hold the switch again for a few seconds.
6. Release the switch.
7. Press and hold the switch until the window is fully open.
8. Lift and hold the switch until the window is fully closed.
9. Release the switch.
10. Open the window using one-touch open.

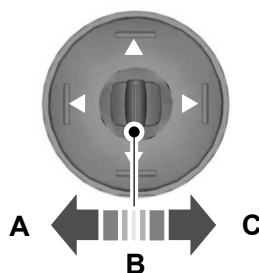
Note: Repeat the procedure if the window does not close when you use one-touch.

EXTERIOR MIRRORS

Power Exterior Mirrors (If Equipped)

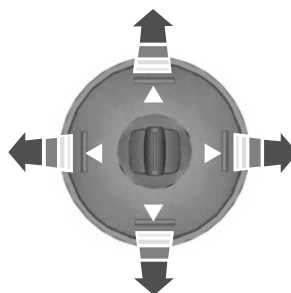


WARNING: Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving. This could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



E70846

- A Left-hand mirror
- B Off
- C Right-hand mirror



E70847

Press the arrows to adjust the mirror.

Note: Do not adjust the mirror by pushing on the mirror glass. You may damage the mirror motor.

Note: Do not clean the housing or glass of any mirror with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum or ammonia-based cleaning products.

Windows and Mirrors

INTERIOR MIRROR - VEHICLES WITH: AUTO-DIMMING INTERIOR MIRROR/INTERIOR MIRROR WITH CAMERA DISPLAY



WARNING: Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving. This could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

The mirror dims to reduce the effect of bright light from behind. It returns to normal when the bright light from behind is no longer present or if you shift into reverse (R).

Do not block the sensors on the front and back of the mirror.

Note: A rear center passenger or raised rear center head restraint could prevent light from reaching the sensor.

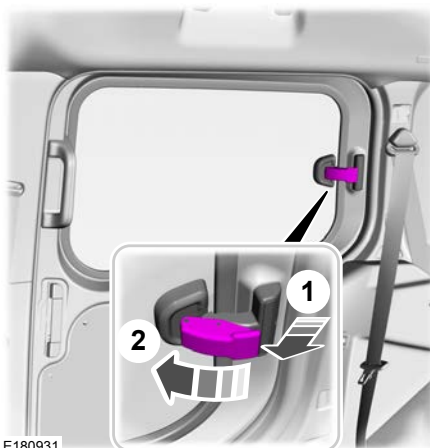
INTERIOR MIRROR - VEHICLES WITH: INTERIOR MIRROR



WARNING: Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving. This could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

Pull the tab below the mirror toward you to reduce the effect of bright light from behind.

SLIDING DOOR WINDOW



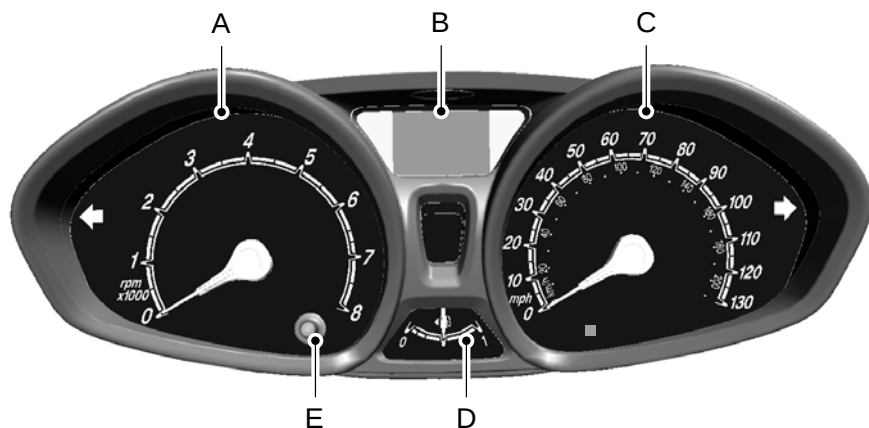
E180931

1. Pull the lever toward you.
2. Push the lever away from you.

Note: Make sure the lever locks into place.

Instrument Cluster

GAUGES



E172883

- A Tachometer.
- B Information display.
- C Speedometer.
- D Fuel gauge.
- E Tripmeter reset button.

Tachometer

Shows the engine speed. The red line thickens where the engine speed enters the overspeed limiter.

Information Display

The information display shows the following information:

- Odometer.
- Trip computer.
- Engine coolant temperature.

Instrument Cluster

Odometer

Records the total distance traveled by your vehicle.

Trip Computer

See **Trip Computer** (page 67).

Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge



E173227

At normal operating temperature the indicator remains in the center section. If the indicator enters the red section, the engine is overheating. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so, switch the engine off and allow it to cool.

Note: *Do not restart the engine until the cause of overheating has been determined and resolved.*

Fuel Gauge

The fuel gauge indicates approximately how much fuel is in the fuel tank.

The arrow adjacent to the fuel pump symbol indicates on which side of your vehicle the fuel filler door is located.



A



B

E236403

- A The fuel filler door is on the left-hand side of your vehicle.
- B The fuel filler door is on the right-hand side of your vehicle.

Low Fuel Level Warning Lamp



If the warning lamp illuminates when you are driving, refuel as soon as possible.

Low Fuel Reminder

Vehicles with Trip Computer

A low fuel level reminder displays and sounds when the distance to empty reaches 120 km (75 mi) for MyKey and 80 km (50 mi) for all other keys.

Note: *The low fuel reminder appears at different fuel gauge positions depending on fuel economy conditions. This variation is normal.*

Vehicles without Trip Computer

A low fuel level reminder displays and sounds when the fuel gauge needle is at 1/16th.

Instrument Cluster

WARNING LAMPS AND INDICATORS

The following warning lamps and indicators alert you to a vehicle condition that may become serious. Some lamps illuminate when you start your vehicle to make sure they work. If any lamps remain on after starting your vehicle, refer to the respective system warning lamp for further information.

Note: Some warning indicators appear in the information display and operate the same as a warning lamp but do not illuminate when you start your vehicle.

Airbag Warning Lamp



If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, continues to flash or remains on when the engine is running, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Anti-Lock Brake System Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Your vehicle continues to have normal braking without the anti-lock brake system function. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Auto-Start-Stop Indicator



It illuminates when the engine has automatically stopped. It flashes to inform you when the engine needs to restart. The indicator is shown with a



strikethrough if the system is not available.

See **Auto-Start-Stop** (page 92).

Battery Charging Condition Warning Lamp



It illuminates when you switch the ignition on.

If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Brake System Warning Lamp



WARNING: Driving your vehicle with the warning lamp on is dangerous. A significant decrease in braking performance may occur. It may take you longer to stop your vehicle. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Driving extended distances with the parking brake engaged can cause brake failure and the risk of personal injury.



It illuminates when you engage the parking brake and the ignition is on.

If it illuminates when your vehicle is moving, make sure the parking brake is disengaged. If the parking brake is disengaged, this indicates low brake fluid level or a brake system fault. Have your vehicle immediately checked.

Cruise Control Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the system on.

See **Cruise Control** (page 121).

Diesel Particulate Filter (If Equipped)



It illuminates if the diesel particulate filter is full. See **Diesel Particulate Filter** (page 107).

Instrument Cluster

Direction Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the left or right direction indicator or the hazard flashers on. Flashes during operation. An increase in the rate of flashing warns of a failed indicator bulb.

Door Ajar Warning Lamp



It illuminates when you switch the ignition on and remains on if any door or the hood is open.

Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when your vehicle is moving, this indicates that the engine is overheating. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Engine Warning Lamps



Powertrain Warning Lamp

If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

If it flashes when you are driving, reduce the speed of your vehicle immediately. Drive in a moderate fashion (avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration) and have your vehicle immediately serviced.



Malfunction Indicator Lamp

If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. The On Board Diagnostics system has detected a malfunction of the vehicle emission control system.

If it flashes, engine misfire may be occurring. Increased exhaust gas temperatures could damage the catalytic converter or other vehicle components. Drive in a moderate fashion (avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration) and have your vehicle immediately serviced.

Fasten Seatbelt Warning Lamp



It illuminates and a chime sounds until you fasten the seatbelts.

Front Fog Lamp Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the front fog lamps on.

Frost Warning Lamp



WARNING: Even if the temperature rises to above 4°C (39°F) there is no guarantee that the road is free of hazards caused by inclement weather.



It illuminates when the outside air temperature is 4°C (39°F) or below.

Glow Plug Indicator



If it illuminates, wait until it turns off before starting.

Headlamp High Beam Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the headlamp high beam on.

Lamps on Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the headlamp low beam or the side and rear lamps on.

Instrument Cluster

Low Fuel Level Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when you are driving, refuel as soon as possible.

Low Oil Level Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when the engine is running, stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off. Check the

engine oil level. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 154).

Low Tire Pressure Warning Lamp

(If Equipped)



It illuminates if the tire pressure in one or more tires is below the correct tire pressure.

See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System** (page 176).

Oil Pressure Warning Lamp



It illuminates when you switch the ignition on.

If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off. Check the engine oil level. If the oil level is sufficient, this indicates a system malfunction. Have your vehicle immediately checked.

See **Engine Oil Check** (page 154).

Oil Service Required Indicator



It illuminates when the engine oil requires changing. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Power Steering Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. Your vehicle continues to have full steering but requires greater force on the steering wheel. Have your vehicle immediately checked.

Rear Fog Lamp Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the rear fog lamps on.

Shift Indicator



It illuminates to advise you that shifting to a higher gear may give better performance, fuel economy or lower emissions.

Stability Control and Traction Control Indicator



Flashes during operation.

If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or remains on when the engine is running, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Note: *The system automatically turns off if there is a malfunction.*

See **Stability Control** (page 114). See **Traction Control** (page 113).

Stability Control and Traction Control Off Warning Lamp



It illuminates when you switch the system off.

See **Stability Control** (page 114). See **Traction Control** (page 113).

Instrument Cluster

Water In Fuel Warning Lamp



It illuminates for a short period of time when you switch the ignition on.

If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates there is excess water in the fuel filter. This occurs when approximately 200 ml (7 fl oz) of water accumulates in the fuel filter water trap. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

AUDIBLE WARNINGS AND INDICATORS

Airbag Secondary Warning

Sounds when the airbag warning lamp is not working.

Auto-Start-Stop Warning

Sounds when you open the driver door and Auto-Start-Stop has turned the engine off.

Exterior Lamps On

Sounds when you open the driver door and the exterior lamps are on.

Low Fuel Reminder

Sounds when the fuel level is low.

Over Speed Warning

Sounds when your vehicle speed exceeds a set limit.

Parking Brake On

Sounds when the parking brake is on and your vehicle is moving.

Seatbelt Reminder

Sounds when a seatbelt is unfastened in an occupied seat and your vehicle is moving.

Information Displays

GENERAL INFORMATION



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

The information display remains on for several minutes after you switch the ignition off.

System Check

Active warnings appear first.



E248946

Press the **OK** button to acknowledge and remove some messages from the information display.

Information Display Controls

Use the information display controls on the audio unit to adjust various system settings on your vehicle.

Menu Structure

Some menus may show features as used in different models, so may appear different to you on your vehicle.

Information Display

Menu	
SYNC settings	Bluetooth
	System info
	Voice
Navigation	Route options
	Map display
	Assistance options
	Personal data
	Reset all settings

Information Displays

Menu	
Audio settings	Adaptive volume
	Sound
	Nav audio mixing
	DSP settings
	DSP equaliser
	Traffic
	News
	Alt. frequency
	RDS regional
	DAB service link
	Bluetooth
Vehicle settings	Traction control
	Tyre pressure sys
	Hill start assist
	Rain sensor
	Indicator
Clock settings	Auto time (GPS)
	Set time
	Set date
	Set time zone
	Summer time
	24-hour mode
Display settings	Measure unit
	Language
	Dimming
Phone	Dial number
	Redial

Information Displays

Menu	
	Phone book
	Call lists
	BT device

Note: You cannot access some menu items and vehicle settings if your vehicle is moving.

TRIP COMPUTER



E146272

Press to button to scroll to the required display. Press and hold the button until the system reset confirmation appears.

Trip Odometer

MI
TRIP

Registers the distance traveled since the function was last reset.

KM
TRIP

Distance to Empty

MI
TO 0

Indicates the approximate distance your vehicle may travel on the fuel remaining in the fuel tank. Changes in driving pattern may cause the value to vary.

KM
TO 0

Note: You cannot reset this function.

Stationary Fuel Economy

G
H

Indicates the current fuel consumption when your vehicle is stationary, and the engine is running.

L
H

Note: You cannot reset this function.

Instantaneous Fuel Economy

MPG

Indicates the current fuel consumption.

L
100KM

Note: You cannot reset this function.

Average Fuel Consumption

Ø MPG

Indicates the average fuel consumption since the function was last reset.

Ø L
100KM

Average Speed

Ø MPH

Indicates the average speed since the function was last reset.

Ø KM
H

Information Displays

INFORMATION MESSAGES



E248946

Press the **OK** button to acknowledge and remove some messages from the information display. The information display removes other messages after a short period of time.



The message indicator illuminates to supplement some messages. The indicator is red or amber depending on the severity of the condition and it remains on until the condition is resolved. A system-specific symbol with a message indicator may supplement some messages.

Depending on vehicle options and instrument cluster type fitted, some of the following information messages may not be available. Some information messages may be abbreviated.

Airbag

Message	Action
Airbag malfunction Service now	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle immediately checked.

Alarm System

Message	Action
Alarm triggered Check vehicle	Displays when the alarm has been triggered due to unauthorized entry. See Anti-Theft Alarm (page 46).
Alarm system malfunction Service required	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Anti-Lock Brake System

Message	Action
ABS malfunction Service now	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Stop your vehicle in a safe place. Have your vehicle immediately checked.

Information Displays

Auto-Start-Stop

Message	Action
Auto StartStop Switch ignition off	Switch the ignition off before leaving your vehicle if the system has shut down the engine. See Auto-Start-Stop (page 92).
Auto StartStop Press a pedal to start engine	Press the brake or clutch pedal. See Auto-Start-Stop (page 92).
Auto StartStop Manual start required	The system is not functioning. The engine requires manually restarting. See Auto-Start-Stop (page 92).
Auto StartStop Select neutral	Displays as a reminder to shift into neutral (N). The engine requires manually restarting. See Auto-Start-Stop (page 92).
Auto StartStop Engine starting	Displays when the system is preparing to restart the engine. See Auto-Start-Stop (page 92).

Diesel Particulate Filter

Message	Action
Diesel filter overloaded See manual	Displays when the system detects an exhaust filter overload. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Failure to respond to a warning lamp or information message may cause component damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty. See Diesel Particulate Filter (page 107).

Engine

Message	Action
Engine preheating	Wait until the message turns off before starting. See Starting a Diesel Engine (page 89).

Engine Immobilizer

Message	Action
Immobiliser malfunction Service now	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Information Displays

Hill Start Assist

Message	Action
Hill start assist not available	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. See Hill Start Assist (page 112).

Lighting

Message	Action
Left Indicator malfunction Change bulb Right Indicator malfunction Change bulb	Displays if a direction indicator bulb fails. See Changing a Bulb (page 161).

Maintenance

Message	Action
Brake fluid Level low Service now	Displays if the brake fluid level is low or if there is a brake system fault. See Brake Fluid Check (page 156). Have your vehicle immediately checked.
Brake system malfunction Stop safely	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Stop your vehicle in a safe place. Have your vehicle immediately checked.
Engine Service now	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Auto wiper/lights malfunction Service required	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Engine oil change due Service required	Displays when the engine oil life is depleted and your vehicle requires an oil change. See Engine Oil Check (page 154).

Information Displays

Parking Brake

Message	Action
Park brake applied	Displays if you have not released the parking brake and the vehicle speed reaches 5 km/h (3 mph). If the warning message remains on after you have released the parking brake, the system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Stability Control

Message	Action
Electronic stability control off	Displays when you switch the system off. See Using Stability Control (page 114).
ESP malfunction Next service	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
ESP off	Displays when you switch the system off. See Using Stability Control (page 114).

Starting System

Message	Action
Press brake to start	Displays when you start your vehicle as a reminder to fully press the brake pedal. See Starting and Stopping the Engine (page 87).
Press clutch to start	Displays when you start your vehicle as a reminder to fully press the clutch pedal. See Starting and Stopping the Engine (page 87).
Press brake and clutch to start	Displays when you start your vehicle as a reminder to fully press the brake and clutch pedals. See Starting and Stopping the Engine (page 87).
Cranking time exceeded	Displays if your vehicle fails to start. See Starting and Stopping the Engine (page 87).

Information Displays

Steering System

Message	Action
Power steering malfunction Service now	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Stop your vehicle in a safe place. Have your vehicle immediately checked.
Steering lock malfunction Stop safely	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Stop your vehicle in a safe place. Have your vehicle immediately checked.
Steering lock malfunction Service now	Immediately reduce the vehicle speed. You continue to have full steering but need to exert greater force on the steering wheel. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System

Message	Action
Check tyre pressures	Displays if the tire pressure in one or more tires is below the correct pressure. See Tire Pressure Monitoring System (page 176).
Tyre pressure sys malfunction Service required	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Tyre monitor malfunction Service required	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Tyre sensors not detected Check manual	Displays if the system detects a fault with a tire pressure sensor or the spare tire is in use. See Tire Pressure Monitoring System (page 176). If the warning message remains on after you have checked the tire pressures, the system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

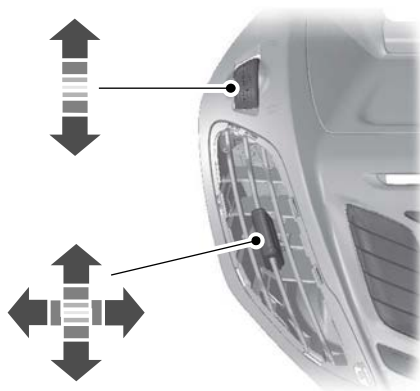
Traction Control

Message	Action
Traction control off	Displays when you switch the system off. See Traction Control (page 113).

Climate Control

AIR VENTS

Center Air Vents



E142194

Side Air Vents



E71942

MANUAL CLIMATE CONTROL

Switching the Climate Control On and Off



Switching the Recirculated Air On and Off



The air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates.

Switching the Air Conditioning On and Off



Note: To keep the system and its components fully functional, switch air conditioning on at least once per month for a minimum of 2 minutes. Do not exceed 1,800 rpm of vehicle engine speed.

Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off



Adjust the temperature control to the full heat position to maximize defrosting.

Note: When you switch maximum defrost off, the heated windshield and heated rear window remain on.

Switching Maximum Cooling On and Off



Turn the temperature control counterclockwise to the lowest setting to maximize cooling.

Note: When you switch maximum cooling off, air conditioning remains on.

Adjusting the Blower Motor Speed



Directing Air to the Windshield Air Vents



Climate Control

Directing Air to the Instrument Panel Air Vents



Directing Air to the Footwell Air Vents



Adjusting the Temperature



E259660

You can adjust the temperature in small increments.

AUTOMATIC CLIMATE CONTROL

Switching the Climate Control On and Off



Switching the Recirculated Air On and Off



The air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates.

Switching the Air Conditioning On and Off



Note: To keep the system and its components fully functional, switch air conditioning on at least once per month for a minimum of 2 minutes. Do not exceed 1,800 rpm of vehicle engine speed.

Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off



Note: When you switch maximum defrost off, the heated windshield and heated rear window remain on.

Switching Maximum Cooling On and Off



Note: When you switch maximum cooling off, air conditioning remains on.

Switching Auto Mode On and Off



Press the button to switch auto mode on. Adjust the blower motor control or air distribution control to switch auto mode off.

The system controls the blower motor speed and direction of airflow to reach and maintain the set temperature.

Adjusting the Blower Motor Speed



Climate Control

Directing Air to the Windshield Air Vents



Directing Air to the Instrument Panel Air Vents



Directing Air to the Footwell Air Vents



Adjusting the Temperature



E259661

You can adjust the temperature between 15.5–29.5°C (60–85°F) in small increments.

HINTS ON CONTROLLING THE INTERIOR CLIMATE - VEHICLES WITH: AUTOMATIC TEMPERATURE CONTROL

Do not place objects under the front seats as this may interfere with the airflow to the rear seats.

Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.

Note: You may feel a small amount of air from the footwell air vents regardless of the air distribution setting.

Note: To reduce humidity build-up inside your vehicle, do not drive with the system switched off or with recirculated air always switched on.

Note: Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to fog up.

Note: Adjusting the settings when your vehicle interior is extremely hot or cold is not necessary. The system automatically adjusts to heat or cool the interior to your selected temperature as quickly as possible. For the system to function efficiently, the instrument panel and side air vents should be fully open.

Note: When you select automatic mode and the ambient temperature is low and the engine is cold, air is directed to the windshield and side air vents.

Note: When you select automatic mode and the interior and exterior temperatures are high, the system selects recirculated air to maximize cooling.

Note: When you switch the system off, outside air does not enter your vehicle.

Note: When you select maximum defrost, air conditioning turns on and air is directed to the windshield air vents.

Quickly Heating the Interior

- Press AUTO.
- Select the highest temperature.

Recommended Settings for Heating

- Press AUTO.
- Select the required temperature.

Climate Control

Quickly Cooling the Interior

- Press MAX A/C.

Recommended Settings for Cooling

- Press AUTO.
- Select the required temperature.

Defogging the Side Windows in Cold Weather

- Select maximum defrost.

Maximum Cooling Using the Instrument Panel and Footwell Air Vents

- Select the lowest temperature.
- Switch on the air conditioning and recirculated air.
- Select the highest blower motor speed and then adjust to suit comfort levels.

HINTS ON CONTROLLING THE INTERIOR CLIMATE - VEHICLES WITH: MANUAL TEMPERATURE CONTROL

Do not place objects under the front seats as this may interfere with the airflow to the rear seats.

Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.

Note: *You may feel a small amount of air from the footwell air vents regardless of the air distribution setting.*

Note: *To reduce humidity build-up inside your vehicle, do not drive with the system switched off or with recirculated air always switched on.*

Note: *To reduce fogging of the windshield during humid weather, direct airflow to the windshield air vents.*

Note: *Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to fog up.*

Quickly Heating the Interior

- Select the highest blower motor speed.
- Select the highest temperature.
- Direct the air to the footwell air vents.

Recommended Settings for Heating

- Select a high blower motor speed.
- Select the required temperature.
- Direct the air to the footwell and windshield air vents.

Quickly Cooling the Interior

- Select a high blower motor speed.
- Select maximum cooling.
- Direct the air to the instrument panel air vents.

Recommended Settings for Cooling

- Select the highest blower motor speed.
- Select the required temperature.
- Direct the air to the instrument panel air vents.

Defogging the Side Windows in Cold Weather

- Direct the air to the instrument panel and windshield air vents.
- Switch on the air conditioning.
- Select the required temperature.
- Select the highest blower motor speed.

Climate Control

- Direct the side air vents toward the side windows.
- Close the center air vents.

Maximum Cooling Using the Instrument Panel and Footwell Air Vents

- Turn the temperature control counterclockwise to the lowest setting.
- Switch on the air conditioning and recirculated air.
- Select the highest blower motor speed and then adjust to suit comfort levels.

HEATED EXTERIOR MIRRORS

When you switch the heated rear window on, the heated exterior mirrors turn on.

Note: Do not remove ice from the mirrors with a scraper or adjust the mirror glass when it is frozen in place.

Note: Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products. The vehicle warranty may not cover damage caused to the mirror housing or glass.

HEATED WINDSHIELD



Press the button to clear the windshield of thin ice and fog. The heated windshield turns off after a short period of time.

Note: Make sure that the engine is running before switching the heated windshield on.

Note: The system does not operate if the battery charge level is low.

HEATED REAR WINDOW



Press the button to clear the rear window of thin ice and fog. The heated rear window turns off after a short period of time.

Note: Make sure the engine is on before operating the heated windows.

Note: Do not use razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window. The vehicle Warranty may not cover damage caused to the heated rear window grid lines.

Seats

SITTING IN THE CORRECT POSITION



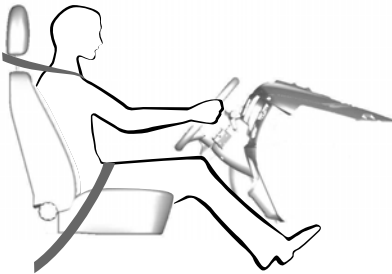
WARNING: Do not recline the seat backrest too far as this can cause the occupant to slide under the seatbelt, resulting in personal injury in the event of a crash.



WARNING: Always sit upright against your seatback with your feet on the floor.



WARNING: Do not place objects higher than the top of the seat backrest. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.



When you use them properly, the seat, head restraint, seatbelt and airbags will provide optimum protection in the event of a crash.

We recommend that you follow these guidelines:

- Sit in an upright position with the base of your spine as far back as possible.
- Do not recline the seat backrest so that your torso is more than 30 degree from the upright position.
- Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forward as possible. Make sure that you remain comfortable.
- Keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. We recommend a minimum of 25 cm (10 in) between your breastbone and the airbag cover.
- Hold the steering wheel with your arms slightly bent.
- Bend your legs slightly so that you can press the pedals fully.
- Position the shoulder strap of the seatbelt over the center of your shoulder and position the lap strap tightly across your hips.

Make sure that your driving position is comfortable and that you can maintain full control of your vehicle.

HEAD RESTRAINTS



WARNING: Fully adjust the head restraint before you sit in or operate your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a collision. Do not adjust the head restraint when your vehicle is moving.

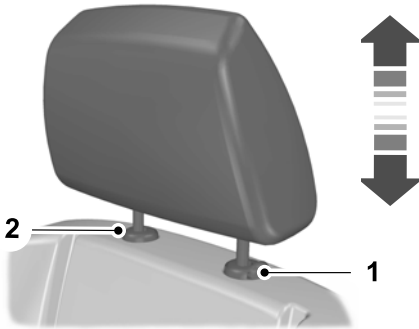
Adjusting the Head Restraints

Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head.

Seats

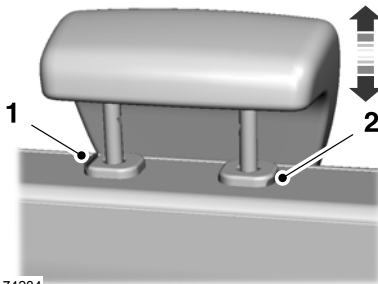
Removing the Head Restraints

Front Head Restraint



1. Press and hold the locking button.
2. Using a suitable implement, release the retaining clip.

Rear Head Restraints



E174284

1. Press and hold the locking button.
2. Using a suitable implement release the retaining clip.

MANUAL SEATS

⚠ WARNING: Do not adjust the driver seat or seat backrest when your vehicle is moving. This may result in sudden seat movement, causing the loss of control of your vehicle.

⚠ WARNING: Do not place cargo or any objects behind the seat backrest before returning it to the original position. Pull on the seat backrest to make sure that it has fully latched after returning the seat backrest to its original position. An unlatched seat may become dangerous if you stop suddenly or have a crash.

Moving the Seat Backward and Forward

⚠ WARNING: Make sure the seat fully locks into place by rocking it backward and forward. Not securing the seat into the locked position can be dangerous in a crash and could cause serious personal injury or death.



E173719

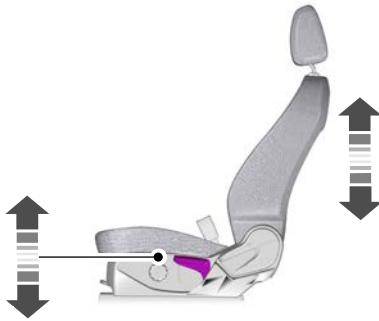
Seats

Adjusting the Lumbar Support



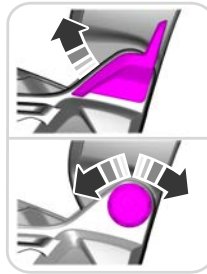
E142199

Adjusting the Height of the Driver Seat



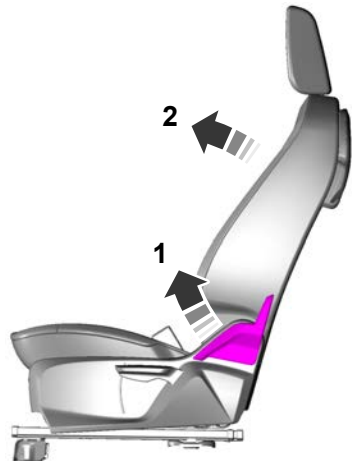
E70730

Recline Adjustment



E173720

Easy Entry (If Equipped)

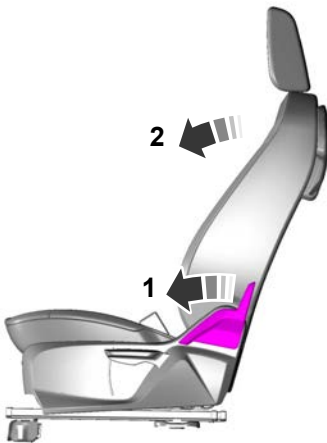


E173722

1. Lift the lever upward.
2. Slide the seat forward.

Seats

Easy Exit (If Equipped)



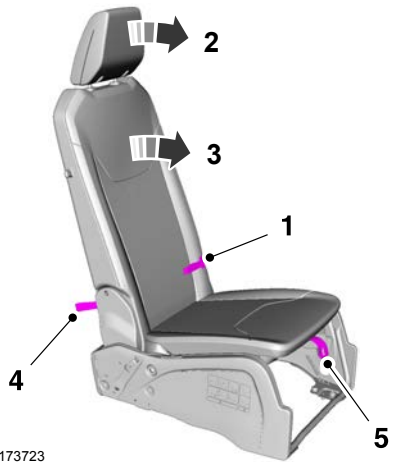
E249331

1. Push the lever forward to release the seat backrest.
2. Fold the seat backrest fully forward.
3. Slide the seat forward.

Front Passenger Folding Seat (If Equipped)



WARNING: When folding the seat backrest down, take care not to get your fingers caught in the mechanism.



E173723

1. Pull the strap on the seat backrest.
2. Fold the head restraint forward.
3. Fold the seat backrest forward.

Note: Make sure there are no objects on or underneath the seat before folding the seat. Failure to remove all objects may cause damage to the seat.

4. To return the seat backrest to the upright position, pull the strap and lift the seat backrest up.
5. Lift and lock the seat cushion.

Note: There are indicators on both sides of the seat. If red is visible on the indicator, the seat cushion is not fully latched. Do not sit on the seat if red is visible on the indicator.

REAR SEATS



WARNING: Do not use the bench seats as a bed when your vehicle is moving. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Seats



WARNING: When folding the seatback down, take care not to get your fingers caught between the seatback and seat frame. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.



WARNING: Do not place objects on a folded seat. Hard objects may become projectiles in a crash or sudden stop, which may increase the risk of serious personal injury.



E175593



WARNING: In some markets, a four-seat vehicle is available. In these vehicles, the center rear position has a raised cushion, does not have a seat belt and is not a designated seating position. Do not let passengers sit there.

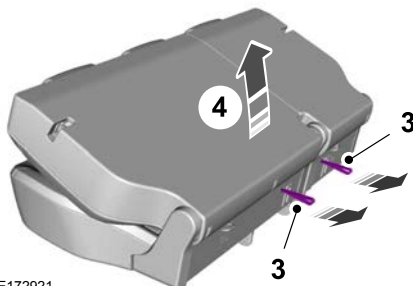
Folding the Seat Forward

Note: Fully lower the head restraint when folding the seats. See **Head Restraints** (page 78).



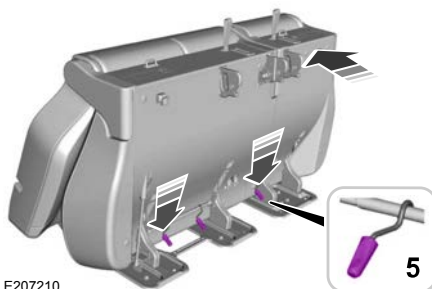
E172920

1. Press the button to release the seatback.
2. Fold the seatback down.



E172921

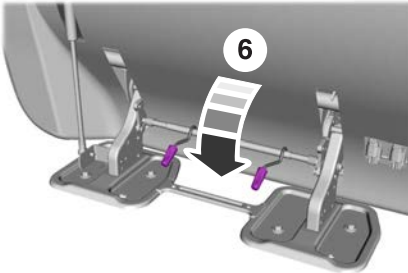
3. Pull the strap on the rear of the seatback.
4. Raise the seat to the vertical position.



E207210

Seats

5. To return the seat to the floor, push the seat slightly while pressing the lever.



E174036

6. Rotate the seat down until it latches to the floor.
7. To return the seatback to the upright position, lift the seatback toward the rear of the vehicle until it locks.

Note: *Rear row occupants can sit next to a seat in the same row that has the seatback in the folded position.*

HEATED SEATS



WARNING: Use caution when using the heated seat if you are unable to feel pain to your skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion or other physical conditions. The heated seat could cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: Do not place anything on the seat that blocks the heat, for example a seat cover or a cushion. This could cause the seat to overheat. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: Do not poke sharp objects into the seat cushion or seat backrest. This could damage the heated seat element and cause it to overheat. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Do not switch the heated seat on if the seat is wet.

The heated seat button is on the climate control assembly.



Repeatedly press the button to adjust the temperature.

Auxiliary Power Points



WARNING: Do not plug optional electrical accessories into the cigar lighter socket. Incorrect use of the cigar lighter can cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty, and can result in fire or serious injury.



WARNING: Do not use a power point for operating a cigar lighter. Incorrect use of the power points can cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty, and can result in fire or serious injury.

- On the rear of the center console.
- Inside the luggage compartment.

CIGAR LIGHTER



WARNING: Do not plug optional electrical accessories into the cigar lighter socket. Incorrect use of the cigar lighter can cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty, and can result in fire or serious injury.

Do not hang any accessory from the accessory plug.

Do not use the power point over the vehicle capacity of 12 volt DC 180 watts or a fuse may blow.

Keep the power point caps closed when not in use.

Do not insert objects other than an accessory plug into the power point.

You can use the power point for up to 75 minutes after you switch the ignition off.

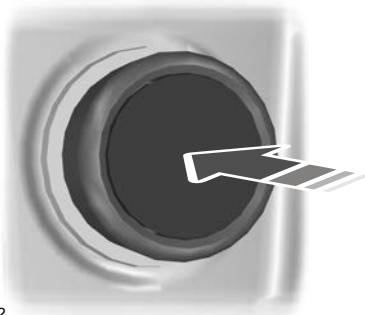
Note: When you switch the ignition on, you can use the socket to power 12 volt appliances with a maximum current rating of 15 amps.

To prevent the battery from running out of charge:

- Do not use the power point longer than necessary when the vehicle is not running.
- Do not leave devices plugged in overnight or when you park your vehicle for extended periods.

Power points may be in the following locations:

- On the center console.
- Inside the center console.



E103382

Press the element in to use the cigar lighter. It pops out after a short period of time.

Do not hold the cigar lighter element pressed in.

Note: If the power supply does not work after you switch the ignition off, switch the ignition on.

Note: If you use the socket when the engine is not running, the battery may run out of charge.

Note: When you switch the ignition on, you can use the socket to power 12 volt appliances with a maximum current rating of 15 amps.

Storage

CUP HOLDERS

CUP HOLDER PRECAUTIONS



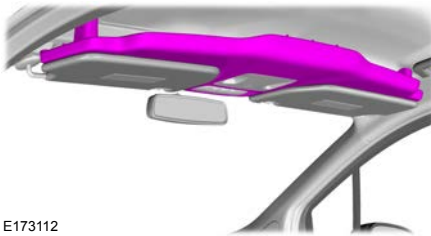
WARNING: Use only soft cups in the cup holders. Hard objects can injure you in a crash.

OVERHEAD STORAGE

LOCATING THE OVERHEAD STORAGE



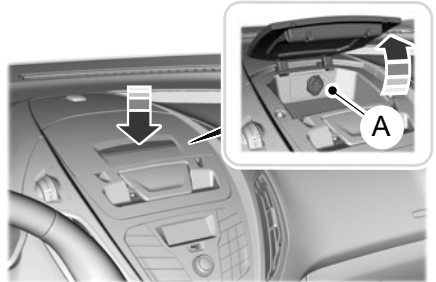
WARNING: Do not place heavy objects in the overhead console. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.



E173112

INSTRUMENT PANEL STORAGE

OPENING THE INSTRUMENT PANEL STORAGE COMPARTMENT

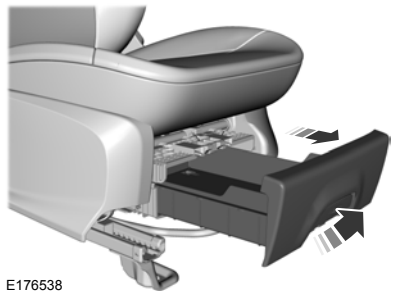


A USB port.

Note: The USB port is only for charging devices.

UNDER SEAT STORAGE

LOCATING THE UNDER SEAT STORAGE COMPARTMENT



E176538

DEVICE HOLDER

INSTALLING AND REMOVING A DEVICE



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.



E260820

1. Lift the clamp.
2. Place your device on the base.
3. Release the clamp.

Note: Do not leave your device in the device holder when leaving your vehicle.

Starting and Stopping the Engine

GENERAL INFORMATION



WARNING: Extended idling at high engine speeds can produce very high temperatures in the engine and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire or other damage.



WARNING: Do not park, idle or drive your vehicle on dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire.



WARNING: Do not start the engine in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes can be toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the engine.



WARNING: Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle inspected immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

If you disconnect the battery, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics for approximately 8 km (5 mi) after you reconnect it. This is because the engine management system must realign itself with the engine. You can disregard any unusual driving characteristics during this period.

The powertrain control system meets all Canadian interference-causing equipment standard requirements regulating the impulse electrical field or radio noise.

When you start the engine, avoid pressing the accelerator pedal before and during operation. Only use the accelerator pedal when you have difficulty starting the engine.

IGNITION SWITCH



E247596

Note: Make sure the key is clean before inserting it into any lock cylinder.

Note: Do not leave the key in the ignition for an extended period of time when the engine is not running. This is to prevent the vehicle battery from losing charge.

Switching the Ignition Off

Turn the key to position **0**.

Switching the Ignition to Accessory Mode

Turn the key to position **I**. Electrical accessories, for example the radio, operate without the engine running.

Switching the Ignition On

Turn the key to position **II**. All electrical circuits and accessories are operational and the warning lamps and indicators illuminate.

Starting and Stopping the Engine

Starting the Engine

Turn the key to position **III**. Release the key when the engine starts.

STEERING WHEEL LOCK



WARNING: Always check that the steering is unlocked before attempting to move your vehicle.

Locking the Steering Wheel

1. Remove the key from the ignition.
2. Slightly rotate the steering wheel to engage the lock.

Unlocking the Steering Wheel

1. Insert the key in the ignition.
2. Turn the key to position **I**.

Note: You may have to slightly rotate the steering wheel to assist unlocking it.

STARTING A GASOLINE ENGINE

The speed at which the engine idles immediately after starting is optimized to minimize vehicle emissions and maximize cabin comfort and fuel economy.

Note: You can only attempt to start the engine for a limited amount of time before the starting system temporarily disables. If you exceed the starting time limit, a message may appear and you cannot attempt to start the engine for at least 15 minutes.

Before starting your vehicle, check the following:

- Make sure the headlamps and electrical accessories are off.
- Make sure the parking brake is on.
- Make sure the transmission is in neutral.

Starting the Engine

1. Fully press the clutch pedal.

Note: Do not touch the accelerator pedal.

2. Turn the key to position **III**.

Note: The engine may continue cranking for up to 15 seconds or until it starts.

Note: The engine takes longer to start at lower temperatures. It may crank for several seconds when very cold.

Failure to Start

If you cannot start the engine after 3 attempts, wait 10 seconds and do the following:

1. Fully press the clutch pedal.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Shift into neutral.
4. Fully press the accelerator pedal and hold it there.
5. Turn the key to position **III** and wait until the engine stops cranking.
6. Release the accelerator pedal.
7. Start the engine.

Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Stationary

1. Shift into neutral.
2. Turn the key to position **0**.
3. Apply the parking brake.

Starting and Stopping the Engine

Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving



WARNING: Switching off the engine when your vehicle is still moving results in a significant decrease in braking assistance. Higher effort is required to apply the brakes and to stop your vehicle. A significant decrease in steering assistance could also occur. The steering does not lock, but higher effort could be required to steer your vehicle. When you switch the ignition off, some electrical circuits, for example airbags, also turn off. If you unintentionally switch the ignition off, shift into neutral (N) and restart the engine.

1. Shift into neutral.
2. Turn the key to position **0**.
3. Use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
4. Apply the parking brake.

Guarding Against Exhaust Fumes



WARNING: Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle inspected immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

Important Ventilating Information

If you stop your vehicle and then leave the engine idling for long periods, we recommend that you do one of the following:

- Open the windows at least 3 cm (1 in).
- Set your climate control to outside air.

Engine Warning Lamps



Malfunction Indicator Lamp
Check Engine

If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. The On Board Diagnostics system has detected a malfunction of the vehicle emission control system.

If it flashes, engine misfire may be occurring. Increased exhaust gas temperatures could damage the catalytic converter or other vehicle components. Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration and have your vehicle immediately serviced.



Powertrain Warning Lamp

If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. If it flashes when you are driving, immediately reduce the vehicle speed. Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration and have your vehicle immediately serviced.

If both lamps illuminate when the engine is running, stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Continuing to drive your vehicle may cause reduced power or the engine to stop. Switch the ignition off and attempt to restart the engine. Have your vehicle immediately checked.

STARTING A DIESEL ENGINE

Before starting your vehicle, check the following:

- Make sure the headlamps and electrical accessories are off.
- Make sure the parking brake is on.
- Make sure the transmission is in neutral.

Starting and Stopping the Engine

Starting the Engine

1. Turn the key to position **II**.
2. Wait until the glow plug indicator turns off.
3. Fully press the clutch pedal.

Note: Do not touch the accelerator pedal.

4. Turn the key to position **III**.

Note: Releasing the clutch pedal when the engine is starting stops the engine cranking and the ignition returns to on.

Note: When the temperature is below -15°C (5°F), you may need to crank the engine for up to 10 seconds.

Note: You can only attempt to start the engine for a limited amount of time before the starting system temporarily disables. If you exceed the starting time limit, a message may appear and you cannot attempt to start the engine for at least 15 minutes.

Failure to Start

If the engine does not start, do the following:

1. Fully press the brake pedal.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Shift into neutral.
4. Turn the key to position **III** until the engine starts.

Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Stationary

1. Shift into neutral.
2. Turn the key to position **0**.
3. Apply the parking brake.

Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving



WARNING: Switching off the engine when your vehicle is still moving results in a significant decrease in braking assistance. Higher effort is required to apply the brakes and to stop your vehicle. A significant decrease in steering assistance could also occur. The steering does not lock, but higher effort could be required to steer your vehicle. When you switch the ignition off, some electrical circuits, for example airbags, also turn off. If you unintentionally switch the ignition off, shift into neutral (N) and restart the engine.

1. Shift into neutral.
2. Turn the key to position **0**.
3. Use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
4. Apply the parking brake.

Guarding Against Exhaust Fumes



WARNING: Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle inspected immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

Important Ventilating Information

If you stop your vehicle and then leave the engine idling for long periods, we recommend that you do one of the following:

- Open the windows at least 3 cm (1 in).
- Set your climate control to outside air.

Starting and Stopping the Engine

Glow Plug Indicator



If it illuminates, wait until it turns off before starting.

Release the accelerator pedal. Wait until the engine has reached idle speed and then switch it off.

Engine Warning Lamps



Malfunction Indicator Lamp
Check Engine

It illuminates when you switch the ignition on. If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration and have your vehicle checked as soon as possible



Powertrain Warning Lamp

If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. If it flashes when you are driving, immediately reduce the vehicle speed. Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration and have your vehicle immediately serviced.

If both lamps illuminate when the engine is running, stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Continuing to drive your vehicle may cause reduced power or the engine to stop. Switch the ignition off and attempt to restart the engine. Have your vehicle immediately checked.

SWITCHING OFF THE ENGINE

Vehicles With a Turbocharger



WARNING: Do not switch the engine off when it is running at high speed. If you do, the turbocharger will continue running after the engine oil pressure has dropped to zero. This will lead to premature turbocharger bearing wear.

Unique Driving Characteristics

AUTO-START-STOP



WARNING: Always switch the ignition off and fully apply the parking brake before carrying out any maintenance or leaving your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death if the engine restarts.

Principle of Operation

The system is designed to help reduce fuel consumption and CO₂ emissions by stopping the engine when it is idling, for example at traffic lights. Your vehicle has an enhanced starter motor that is designed for an increased number of engine starts.

The system does not stop the engine under certain conditions, for example:

- If you have opened the driver door.
- If you have unfastened the driver seatbelt.
- If your vehicle is at high altitude.
- If you have switched the heated windshield on.
- If the engine is warming up.
- If the outside temperature is too low or too high.
- If the battery charge is low or the battery temperature is outside the optimal operating range.
- To maintain the interior climate or reduce fogging.

The system restarts the engine under certain conditions, for example:

- If you switch the heated windshield on.
- If you switch maximum defrost on.
- If your vehicle starts to roll downhill in neutral.

- To maintain adequate brake assistance.
- To maintain the interior climate or reduce fogging.

Note: The blower motor speed could change when the system restarts the engine.

Using Auto-Start-Stop

Stopping the Engine

1. Stop your vehicle.
2. Shift into neutral.
3. Release the clutch pedal.

Note: Power assist steering turns off when the engine is off.

Restarting the Engine

Fully press the clutch pedal.

Note: To obtain maximum benefit from the system, shift into neutral and release the clutch pedal whenever you stop your vehicle for more than three seconds.

Note: The system provides stall recovery. To restart the engine after stalling, fully press the clutch pedal.

Switching the System On and Off



The system turns on when you switch the ignition on. Press the switch to switch it off.

Note: **OFF** illuminates in the switch.

Press the switch again to switch the system back on.

The auto-start-stop indicator illuminates green when the engine stops. It flashes amber when you need to take an action.

Note: The system turns off when it detects a malfunction. If it remains off, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Unique Driving Characteristics

Auto-Start-Stop Warning

Sounds when you open the driver door and the system has stopped the engine.

Replacing the Battery

Replace the battery with one of exactly the same specification for the system to function correctly.

Fuel and Refueling

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.



WARNING: The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler inlet, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.



WARNING: Fuels can cause serious injury or death if misused or mishandled.



WARNING: Fuel may contain benzene, which is a cancer-causing agent.



WARNING: When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.

- Avoid inhaling fuel vapors. Inhaling fuel vapor can lead to eye and respiratory tract irritation. In severe cases, excessive or prolonged breathing of fuel vapor can cause serious illness and permanent injury.
- Avoid getting fuel in your eyes. If you splash fuel in your eyes, immediately remove contact lenses (if worn), flush with water for 15 minutes and seek medical attention. Failure to seek proper medical attention could lead to permanent injury.
- Fuels can be harmful if absorbed through the skin. If you splash fuel on your skin, clothing or both, promptly remove contaminated clothing and thoroughly wash your skin with soap and water. Repeated or prolonged skin contact causes skin irritation.
- Be particularly careful if you are taking Antabuse or other forms of Disulfiram for the treatment of alcoholism. Breathing fuel vapors could cause an adverse reaction, serious personal injury or sickness. Immediately call a physician if you experience any adverse reactions.

Follow these guidelines when refueling:

- Extinguish all smoking materials and any open flames before refueling your vehicle.
- Always switch the engine off before refueling.
- Automotive fuels can be harmful or fatal if swallowed. Fuel is highly toxic and if swallowed can cause death or permanent injury. If fuel is swallowed immediately call a physician, even if no symptoms are immediately apparent. The toxic effects of fuel may not be apparent for hours.

FUEL QUALITY - GASOLINE



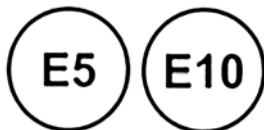
WARNING: Do not mix diesel with gasoline, gasohol or alcohol. This could cause an explosion.



WARNING: Do not use leaded gasoline or gasoline with additives containing other metallic compounds, for example manganese-based. They could damage the emission system.

Use minimum 95 octane unleaded gasoline that meets the specification defined by EN 228 or the equivalent national specification.

Fuel and Refueling



E268502

Your vehicle is suitable for use with ethanol blends up to 10% (E5 and E10).

Note: We recommend that you only use high quality fuel. We do not recommend the use of aftermarket fuel additives or other engine treatments.

Long-Term Storage

Most gasoline contains ethanol. We recommend that you fill the fuel tank with fuel that does not contain ethanol if you intend to store your vehicle for more than two months.

FUEL QUALITY - DIESEL



WARNING: Do not mix diesel with gasoline, gasohol or alcohol. This could cause an explosion.

Use diesel that meets the specification defined by EN 590 or the relevant national specification.



E268503

Your vehicle is suitable for use with biodiesel blends up to 7% (B7).

Note: We recommend that you only use high quality fuel. We do not recommend the use of aftermarket fuel additives or other engine treatments.

Note: We do not recommend the use of additional additives to prevent fuel waxing.

Long-Term Storage

Most diesel fuels contain biodiesel. We recommend that you fill the fuel tank with fuel that does not contain biodiesel if you intend to store your vehicle for more than two months.

FUEL FILLER FUNNEL LOCATION

The fuel filler funnel is in the glove compartment.

RUNNING OUT OF FUEL

Running out of fuel can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

If your vehicle runs out of fuel:

- Add a minimum of 5 L (1.1 gal) of fuel to restart the engine.
- You may need to switch the ignition from off to on several times after refueling to allow the fuel system to pump the fuel from the tank to the engine. When restarting, cranking time takes a few seconds longer than normal.

Note: If your vehicle is on a steep slope, more fuel may be required.

Fuel and Refueling

Filling a Portable Fuel Container



WARNING: Flow of fuel through a fuel pump nozzle can produce static electricity. This can cause a fire if you are filling an ungrounded fuel container.

Use the following guidelines to avoid electrostatic charge build-up, which can produce a spark, when filling an ungrounded fuel container:

- Only use an approved fuel container to transfer fuel to your vehicle. Place the container on the ground when filling it.
- Do not fill a fuel container when it is inside your vehicle (including the cargo area).
- Keep the fuel pump nozzle in contact with the fuel container when filling it.
- Do not use a device that holds the fuel pump nozzle lever in the fill position.

Adding Fuel From a Portable Fuel Container



WARNING: Do not insert the nozzle of a fuel container or an aftermarket funnel into the fuel filler neck. This may damage the fuel system filler neck or its seal and cause fuel to run onto the ground.



WARNING: Do not try to pry open or push open the capless fuel system with foreign objects. This could damage the fuel system and its seal and cause injury to you or others.



WARNING: Do not dispose of fuel in the household refuse or the public sewage system. Use an authorized waste disposal facility.

When refueling the vehicle fuel tank from a fuel container, use the fuel filler funnel included with your vehicle. See **Fuel Filler Funnel Location** (page 95).

Note: Do not use aftermarket funnels as they may not work with the capless fuel system and can damage it.

When refueling the vehicle fuel tank from a fuel container, do the following:

1. Fully open the fuel filler door.
2. Fully insert the fuel filler funnel into the fuel filler inlet.



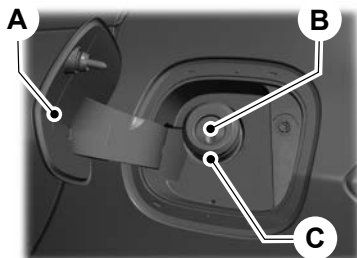
3. Add fuel to your vehicle from the fuel container.
4. Remove the fuel filler funnel.
5. Fully close the fuel filler door.
6. Clean the fuel filler funnel and place it back in your vehicle or correctly dispose of it.

Note: Extra funnels can be purchased from an authorized dealer if you choose to dispose of the funnel.

Fuel and Refueling

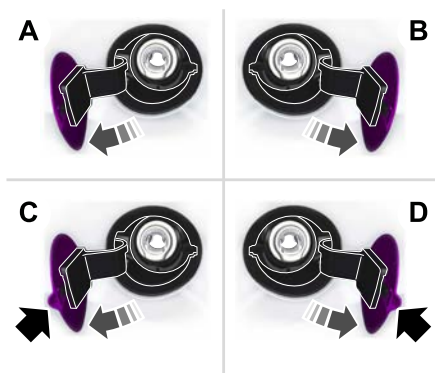
REFUELING

Refueling System Overview



- A Fuel filler door.
- B Fuel tank filler valve.
- C Fuel tank filler pipe.

Your vehicle does not have a fuel tank filler cap.



- A Left-hand side. To open the fuel filler door, press the center rear edge of the fuel filler door and then release.
- B Right-hand side. To open the fuel filler door, press the center rear edge of the fuel filler door and then release.
- C Left-hand side. Pull the rear of the fuel filler door to open it.
- D Right-hand side. Pull the rear of the fuel filler door to open it.

Refueling Your Vehicle



WARNING: When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.

Fuel and Refueling

WARNING: The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler inlet, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.

WARNING: Do not pry open the fuel tank filler valve. This could damage the fuel system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.

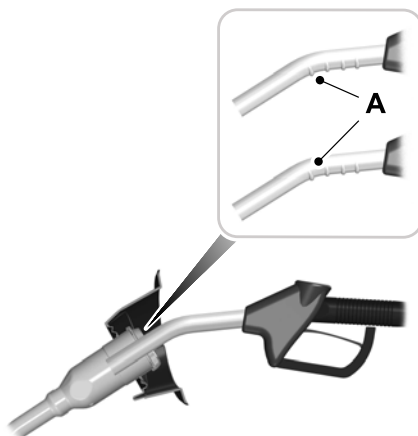
WARNING: Do not remove the fuel pump nozzle from its fully inserted position when refueling.

WARNING: Stop refueling when the fuel pump nozzle automatically shuts off for the first time. Failure to follow this will fill the expansion space in the fuel tank and could lead to fuel overflowing.

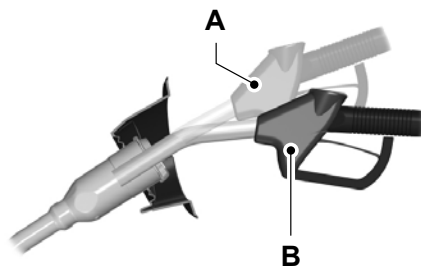
WARNING: Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.

WARNING: Wait at least five seconds before removing the fuel pump nozzle to allow any residual fuel to drain into the fuel tank.

1. Fully open the fuel filler door.
2. Select the correct fuel pump nozzle for your vehicle.



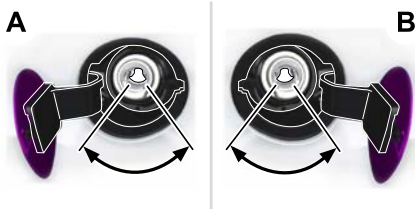
3. Insert the fuel pump nozzle up to the first notch on the nozzle A. Keep the fuel pump nozzle resting on the fuel tank filler pipe.



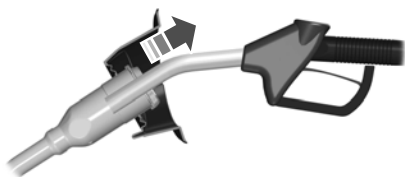
E139203

4. Hold the fuel pump nozzle in position B when refueling. Holding the fuel pump nozzle in position A can affect the flow of fuel and shut off the fuel pump nozzle before the fuel tank is full.

Fuel and Refueling



5. Operate the fuel pump nozzle within the area shown.



6. When you finish refueling slightly raise the fuel pump nozzle and slowly remove it.
7. Fully close the fuel filler door.

Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the fuel tank with incorrect fuel. Incorrect fuel use could cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty. Have your vehicle immediately checked.

Refueling System Warning (If Equipped)

If the fuel tank filler valve does not fully close, a message could appear in the information display.

Message
Check fuel fill inlet

If the message appears, do the following:

1. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off.
2. Shift into park (P) or neutral (N).

3. Apply the parking brake.
4. Fully open the fuel filler door.
5. Check the fuel tank filler valve for any debris that may be restricting its movement.
6. Remove any debris from the fuel tank filler valve.
7. Fully insert a fuel pump nozzle or the fuel filler funnel provided with your vehicle into the fuel filler pipe. See **Fuel Filler Funnel Location** (page 95). This action should dislodge any debris that may be preventing the fuel tank filler valve from fully closing.
8. Remove the fuel pump nozzle or fuel filler funnel from the fuel filler pipe.
9. Fully close the fuel filler door.

Note: The message may not immediately reset. If the message continues to appear and a warning lamp illuminates, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Engine Emission Control

CATALYTIC CONVERTER - 1.0L ECOBOOST™



WARNING: Do not park, idle or drive your vehicle on dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire.



WARNING: The normal operating temperature of the exhaust system is very high. Never work around or attempt to repair any part of the exhaust system until it has cooled. Use special care when working around the catalytic converter. The catalytic converter heats up to a very high temperature after only a short period of engine operation and stays hot after the engine is switched off.



WARNING: Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle inspected immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

Your vehicle has various emission control components and a catalytic converter that enables it to comply with applicable exhaust emission standards.

To avoid damaging the catalytic converter:

- Do not crank the engine for more than 10 seconds at a time.
- Do not run the engine with a spark plug lead disconnected.
- Do not push-start or tow-start your vehicle. Use booster cables. See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 135).
- Do not switch the ignition off when your vehicle is moving.

- Do not use leaded fuel.
- Avoid running out of fuel.

Note: Resulting component damage may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

On-Board Diagnostics System

Your vehicle has an on-board diagnostics system that monitors the emission control system. If any of the following warning lamps illuminate, this may indicate that the on-board diagnostics system has detected an emission control system malfunction.



Continuing to drive your vehicle may cause reduced power or the engine to stop. Failure to respond to a warning lamp may cause component damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 61).

SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTANT SYSTEM - 1.5L DURATORQ-TDCI DIESEL

Your vehicle has a selective catalytic reductant system. This reduces exhaust emission levels by injecting AdBlue® into the exhaust system. The engine does not start if you tamper with or disable the selective catalytic reductant system.

For the system to correctly operate, you must maintain the fluid level.

Engine Emission Control

Note: When you switch the engine off the selective catalytic reductant system pump runs for a short period of time. This is normal.

AdBlue® Guidelines

- Only use AdBlue® certified to ISO-22241.
- Do not put AdBlue® in the vehicle fuel tank. This can cause engine damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.
- Do not put fuel or any additives in the AdBlue® tank. This can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.
- Do not overfill the AdBlue® tank.
- Do not dilute with water or any other liquid.
- Do not re-use an empty fluid container.
- Do not store in direct sunlight.
- Store at temperatures between -5°C (23°F) and 20°C (68°F).
- Do not store fluid containers in your vehicle.
- The fluid is non-flammable, non-toxic, colorless and water-soluble.
- Immediately remove any residue on painted surfaces when filling with AdBlue®.

Filling the AdBlue® Tank



The AdBlue® tank filler pipe is next to the fuel tank filler pipe and has a blue cap. Fill the tank using a fluid pump at an AdBlue® filling station or an AdBlue® container.

Filling in Cold Climates

AdBlue® may freeze when the temperature is below -11°C (12°F). Your vehicle has a preheating system which allows the fluid to operate below -11°C (12°F). If you overfill the AdBlue® tank and the fluid freezes, it may cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Note: It may not be possible to fully fill the AdBlue® tank when the temperature is below -11°C (12°F).

Note: If the AdBlue® tank is frozen, it could not correctly display the fluid level or recognize when you fill the tank. The AdBlue® level updates when the tank completely thaws out.

Engine Emission Control

Filling the AdBlue® Tank Using a Fuel Station Pump



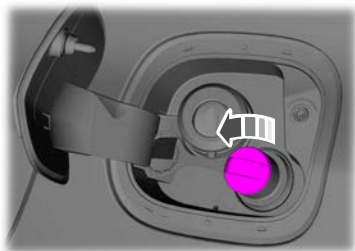
WARNING: Do not allow diesel exhaust fluid (AdBlue) to come into contact with eyes, skin or clothing. Should the fluid come into contact with eyes, flush them with plenty of water and seek medical attention. Clean affected skin with soap and water. If swallowed, drink plenty of water and seek medical attention immediately.



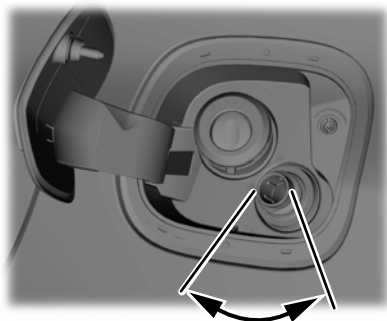
WARNING: Refill the diesel exhaust fluid (AdBlue) tank in a well-ventilated area. When removing the tank cap or a container cap, ammonia vapor may escape. Ammonia vapor is an irritant to the eyes, skin and mucous membranes. Inhaling ammonia vapor can cause burning to the eyes, throat and nose resulting in watering eyes or severe coughing.

Filling the AdBlue® tank using a fuel station pump is similar to refueling your vehicle.

1. Fully open the fuel filler door.



2. Remove the AdBlue® tank filler cap.
3. Fully insert the AdBlue® pump nozzle.



4. Operate the AdBlue® pump nozzle within the area shown.

Note: The pump nozzle shuts off when the tank is full.

5. Slightly raise the AdBlue® pump nozzle and then slowly remove it.
6. Replace the AdBlue® tank filler cap. Turn it clockwise until you feel a strong resistance and it clicks.

Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the AdBlue® tank with incorrect fluid. Incorrect fluid use could cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Filling the AdBlue® Tank Using a Container



WARNING: Do not allow diesel exhaust fluid (AdBlue) to come into contact with eyes, skin or clothing. Should the fluid come into contact with eyes, flush them with plenty of water and seek medical attention. Clean affected skin with soap and water. If swallowed, drink plenty of water and seek medical attention immediately.

Engine Emission Control

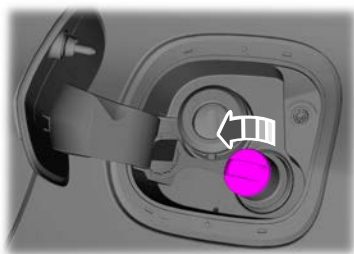


WARNING: Refill the diesel exhaust fluid (AdBlue®) tank in a well-ventilated area. When removing the tank cap or a container cap, ammonia vapor may escape. Ammonia vapor is an irritant to the eyes, skin and mucous membranes. Inhaling ammonia vapor can cause burning to the eyes, throat and nose resulting in watering eyes or severe coughing.

Use containers that have a seal on the spout.

Always follow the manufacturer's instructions.

1. Remove the fluid container cap.
2. Place the spout on to the container and tighten it until you feel a strong resistance.



3. Remove the AdBlue® tank filler cap.
4. Insert the spout into the AdBlue® tank filler pipe until the seal on the spout fully seats.
5. Pour the fluid into the tank.

Note: The fluid stops flowing when the tank is full.

6. Return the container to the vertical position slightly below the AdBlue® tank filler pipe.

7. Allow any fluid remaining in the spout to drain back into the container.
8. Remove the spout from the AdBlue® tank filler pipe.
9. Remove the spout from the AdBlue® container and replace the cap.
10. Replace the AdBlue® tank filler cap. Turn it clockwise until you feel a strong resistance and it clicks.

Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the AdBlue® tank with incorrect fluid. Incorrect fluid use could cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Checking the AdBlue® Level

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Information**.
3. Select **AdBlue®**.

AdBlue® Consumption

AdBlue® consumption is directly related to fuel consumption and is governed by many factors, for example driving style, high speed driving, stop-start driving, air conditioning usage, add-on accessories, payload and towing. The AdBlue® consumption may vary between 1% and 6% of the fuel consumption.

AdBlue® consumption is specified for a vehicle variant and not for a single car.

Selective Catalytic Reductant System Warning Lamp



The warning lamp illuminates if the system detects the fluid level is low or if there is a system malfunction.

Engine Emission Control

If the warning lamp illuminates, the information display messages give you an indication whether the concern is fluid related or if there is a selective catalytic reductant system malfunction. If the

warning lamp illuminates when your vehicle is moving, and the fluid is at a sufficient level, this indicates a system malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Selective Catalytic Reductant System Information Messages

AdBlue® Level

Message	Action
AdBlue® low Range : XXXX km Refill soon AdBlue® low Range : XXXX mls Refill soon	Indicates the approximate distance remaining before the AdBlue® tank becomes empty. Refill the AdBlue® tank as soon as possible.
AdBlue® low No engine start in XXXX km AdBlue® low No engine start in XXXX mls	Indicates the approximate distance remaining before the AdBlue® tank becomes empty. The engine would not restart if you switch the ignition off. Refill the AdBlue® tank as soon as possible.
AdBlue® level empty. Refill to start engine	The AdBlue® tank is empty. The engine would not restart if you switch the ignition off. Refill the AdBlue® tank. The minimum AdBlue® refill quantity required to restart the engine is available in the information display. See Information Displays (page 65).

Note: When filling the AdBlue® tank from empty, there may be a short period before the increased AdBlue® level is registered.

Note: If the AdBlue® tank freezes at low level, the displayed remaining distance could be reduced.

Engine Emission Control

AdBlue® Malfunction

Message	Action
AdBlue® system malfunction Service required	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
AdBlue® system No engine start in XXXX km AdBlue® system No engine start in XXXX mls	Indicates the approximate distance before a detected system fault would restrict the engine from starting. The engine would not restart if you switch the ignition off. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
AdBlue® system Service required to start engine	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

GASOLINE PARTICULATE FILTER - 1.0L ECOBOOST™



WARNING: Do not park or idle your vehicle over dry leaves, dry grass or other combustible materials. The regeneration process creates very high exhaust gas temperatures and the exhaust will radiate a considerable amount of heat during and after regeneration and after you have switched the engine off. This is a potential fire hazard.

To reduce the risk of causing damage to the gasoline particulate filter:

- Do not crank the engine for more than 10 seconds at a time.
- Do not push-start or tow-start your vehicle. Use booster cables. See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 135).
- Do not switch the ignition off when your vehicle is moving.
- Do not ignore warning lamps, indicators or information messages.

Gasoline Particulate Filter Regeneration

Particles in the exhaust gas collect in the gasoline particulate filter causing a gradual restriction over time. This restriction is removed through a regeneration process controlled by the engine control system. The regeneration process converts the particles in the exhaust gas into harmless gases.

Regeneration occurs during normal driving, to varying degrees depending on how you drive. Passive regeneration occurs when you drive at moderate to high speed but if you generally drive short distances at low speed, the engine control system could actively raise the exhaust gas temperature to remove the particles that have collected in the filter to make sure that it continues to correctly operate.

Engine Emission Control

To assist passive regeneration, we recommend that you make occasional journeys that allow you to:

- Drive at a varied range of conditions, including highway conditions for a minimum of 20 minutes.
- Avoid prolonged engine idling.
- Select a suitable gear to maintain engine speed between 1500 and 4000 RPM.

If the filter is saturated or is approaching saturation, a warning lamp illuminates or a message appears in the information display.

Note: A warning lamp illuminates and a message appears in the information display on some vehicles.

If you do not take action when a warning lamp illuminates or a message appears in the information display, you could cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Gasoline Particulate Filter Warning Lamps and Indicators



Malfunction indicator lamp.

Gasoline Particulate Filter Information Messages

Message	Action
Exhaust filter at limit Drive to clean	• Drive at a varied range of conditions, including highway conditions for 20 minutes or until the message disappears. • Avoid prolonged engine idling. • Select a suitable gear to maintain engine speed between 1500 and 4000 RPM.
Exhaust filter over limit Service now	• Drive at a moderate speed. • Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration. • Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Engine Emission Control

DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER -1.5L DURATORQ-TDCI DIESEL



WARNING: Do not park or idle your vehicle over dry leaves, dry grass or other combustible materials. The regeneration process creates very high exhaust gas temperatures and the exhaust will radiate a considerable amount of heat during and after regeneration and after you have switched the engine off. This is a potential fire hazard.



WARNING: The normal operating temperature of the exhaust system is very high. Never work around or attempt to repair any part of the exhaust system until it has cooled. Use special care when working around the diesel oxidation catalytic converter or the diesel particulate filter. The diesel oxidation catalytic converter and the diesel particulate filter heat up to very high temperatures after only a short period of engine operation and remain hot after you switch the engine off.



WARNING: Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle inspected immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

Your vehicle has various emission control components and a diesel particulate filter that enables it to comply with applicable exhaust emission standards. It filters harmful diesel particulates, for example soot from the exhaust gas.

To avoid damaging the diesel particulate filter:

- Do not crank the engine for more than 10 seconds at a time.
- Do not push-start or tow-start your vehicle. Use booster cables. See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 135).
- Do not switch the ignition off when your vehicle is moving.
- Do not ignore warning lamps or information messages regarding exhaust system cleaning and regeneration.

Note: *This could result in damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

On-Board Diagnostics System

Your vehicle has an on-board diagnostics system that monitors the emission control system. If any of the following warning lamps illuminate, this indicates that the on-board diagnostics system has detected an emission control system malfunction.



Engine coolant temperature warning lamp.



Ignition warning lamp.



Malfunction indicator lamp.



Powertrain warning Lamp.



Water in fuel warning lamp.

If you continue to drive your vehicle with a warning lamp illuminated, the engine could stop without warning. This could result in damage not covered by the vehicle warranty. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Engine Emission Control

See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 61).

Diesel Particulate Filter Automatic Regeneration



WARNING: Do not park or idle your vehicle over dry leaves, dry grass or other combustible materials. The regeneration process creates very high exhaust gas temperatures and the exhaust will radiate a considerable amount of heat during and after regeneration and after you have switched the engine off. This is a potential fire hazard.



WARNING: The normal operating temperature of the exhaust system is very high. Never work around or attempt to repair any part of the exhaust system until it has cooled. Use special care when working around the diesel oxidation catalytic converter or the diesel particulate filter. The diesel oxidation catalytic converter and the diesel particulate filter heat up to very high temperatures after only a short period of engine operation and remain hot after you switch the engine off.

The diesel particulate filter on your vehicle requires periodic regeneration to maintain correct operation. The emission control system automatically carries out this process. As soot gathers in the system it begins to restrict the filter. The soot that gathers inside the filter is cleaned in two different ways, passive regeneration and active regeneration. Both methods occur automatically and require no actions from the driver. During automatic regeneration, the system cleans the diesel particulate filter by oxidizing the soot. Cleaning happens during normal engine operating conditions at varying levels depending on driving conditions.



Diesel particulate filter warning lamp.

If the diesel particulate filter is near or at saturation, a warning lamp or information message appears in the information display. Drive your vehicle in a manner to allow effective diesel particulate filter cleaning.

The warning lamp continues to illuminate until the automatic regeneration process completes. Continue to drive your vehicle in a manner to allow effective diesel particulate filter cleaning until the warning lamp turns off.

Failure to carry out regeneration when required could result in a clogged diesel particulate filter. If the diesel particulate filter fills beyond the regeneration threshold, the system disables the ability to carry out regeneration. This could result in damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Where vehicle use meets any of the following conditions:

- Driving short distances.
- Prolonged engine idling.
- Frequently switching the engine on and off.
- High levels of acceleration and deceleration.

We recommend you assist the regeneration process by:

- Avoiding prolonged engine idling.
- Drive your vehicle in a manner to allow effective cleaning. Drive at a steady vehicle speed of 48 km/h (30 mph) or above for approximately 20 minutes.

Engine Emission Control



If the soot load in the diesel particulate filter reaches a critical level, the malfunction indicator lamp illuminates with the diesel particulate filter warning message. A service regeneration must be performed to recover the particulate filter. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible to prevent further damage.

Automatic regeneration raises the exhaust temperature to eliminate the soot particles. During cleaning, soot particles are converted to harmless gasses. Once cleaned, the diesel particulate filter continues to trap harmful diesel particles.

If you are driving your vehicle in a manner that allows effective cleaning, a message may appear in the information display to indicate automatic regeneration is in progress.

If you are not driving your vehicle in a manner that allows effective cleaning, a message may appear in the information display to instruct you to drive in a manner that allows automatic regeneration.

The automatic regeneration process is most effective when you drive at a steady vehicle speed of 48 km/h (30 mph) or above for approximately 20 minutes. The frequency and duration of the regeneration process varies by how you drive your vehicle, the outside air temperature and altitude. Frequency varies between 160 km (100 mi) and 500 km (310 mi) and each regeneration process lasts between 10 and 20 minutes.

Note: *Changes in the engine or exhaust sound may be heard during the regeneration process.*

Note: *During regeneration at low speed or engine idle, you could smell a hot metallic odor and could notice a clicking metallic sound. This is due to the high temperatures reached during the regeneration process. This is normal.*

Transmission

MANUAL TRANSMISSION

General Information

Do not rest your hand on the gearshift lever or use the gearshift lever to hang and support objects. This could cause damage to the transmission not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Do not rest your foot on the clutch pedal or use the clutch pedal to keep your vehicle stationary when waiting on a hill. This could cause damage to the clutch not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

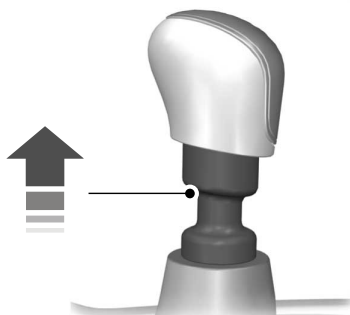
Failure to fully press the clutch pedal could cause increased shift efforts, prematurely wear transmission components or damage to the transmission.

If any gear is not fully engaged, fully press the clutch pedal and shift into neutral. Release the clutch pedal for a moment, fully press the clutch pedal again and shift into gear.

Shifting Into Reverse Gear

Do not shift into reverse gear when your vehicle is moving. This could cause damage to the transmission not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

1. Fully press the brake pedal.
2. Fully press the clutch pedal and shift into neutral.



3. Raise the collar and shift into reverse gear.

Brakes

GENERAL INFORMATION

Note: Occasional brake noise is normal. If a metal-to-metal, continuous grinding or continuous squeal sound is present, the brake linings may be worn-out. If your vehicle has continuous vibration or shudder in the steering wheel while braking, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

Note: Brake dust may accumulate on the wheels, even under normal driving conditions. Some dust is inevitable as the brakes wear. See **Cleaning the Wheels** (page 169).

Note: Depending on applicable laws in the country your vehicle was built for, if you heavily brake, the hazard flashers could turn on.

Wet brakes result in reduced braking efficiency. Gently press the brake pedal a few times when driving from a car wash or standing water to dry the brakes.

Brake Over Accelerator

In the event the accelerator pedal becomes stuck or entrapped, apply steady and firm pressure to the brake pedal to slow the vehicle and reduce engine power. If you experience this condition, apply the brakes and bring your vehicle to a safe stop. Shift the transmission to park (P) (automatic transmission) or to a low gear (manual transmission), switch the engine off and apply the parking brake. Check the accelerator pedal and the area around it for any items or debris that may be obstructing its movement. If none are found and the condition persists, have your vehicle towed to the dealer for service.

Brake Assist

Brake assist detects when you rapidly brake by measuring the rate at which you press the brake pedal. It provides maximum braking efficiency as long as you press the pedal. Brake support assists with full braking and reduces the severity of a crash with the vehicle in front of you.

Anti-lock Brake System (If Equipped)

This system helps you maintain steering control and vehicle stability during emergency stops by keeping the brakes from locking.

HINTS ON DRIVING WITH ANTI-LOCK BRAKES

The anti-lock brake system does not eliminate the risks when:

- You drive too closely to the vehicle in front of you.
- Your vehicle is hydroplaning.
- You take corners too fast.
- The road surface is poor.

Note: If the system activates, the brake pedal could pulse and may travel further. Maintain pressure on the brake pedal. You may also hear a noise from the system. This is normal.

PARKING BRAKE



WARNING: Always fully apply the parking brake. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Note: If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing uphill select first gear and turn the steering wheel away from the curb.

Brakes

Note: *If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing downhill select reverse gear and turn the steering wheel toward the curb.*

Note: *Do not press the release button while pulling the lever up.*

To apply the parking brake:

1. Press the brake pedal firmly.
2. Pull the parking brake lever up to its fullest extent.

To release the parking brake:

1. Press the brake pedal firmly.
2. Pull the lever up slightly.
3. Press the release button and push the lever down.

HILL START ASSIST



WARNING: The system does not replace the parking brake. When you leave your vehicle, always apply the parking brake.



WARNING: You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



WARNING: The system turns off if there is a malfunction or if you excessively rev the engine.

The system makes it easier to pull away when your vehicle is on a slope without the need to use the parking brake.

When the system activates, your vehicle remains stationary on a slope for a few seconds after you release the brake pedal. This allows you time to move your foot from the brake to the accelerator pedal. The brakes release when the engine has developed sufficient torque to prevent your vehicle from rolling down the slope. This is an advantage when pulling away on a slope, for example from a car park ramp, traffic lights or when reversing uphill into a parking space.

Using Hill Start Assist

1. Press the brake pedal to bring your vehicle to a complete standstill. Keep the brake pedal pressed and shift into first gear when facing uphill or reverse (R) when facing downhill.
2. The system activates if the sensors detect that your vehicle is on a slope.
3. When you remove your foot from the brake pedal, your vehicle remains on the slope without rolling away for a few seconds. This hold time increases if you are in the process of driving off.
4. Pull away in the normal manner.

Switching the System On and Off

You can switch this feature on or off in the information display. The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

Traction Control

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

The traction control system helps avoid drive wheel spin and loss of traction.

If your vehicle begins to slide, the system applies the brakes to individual wheels and, when needed, reduces engine power at the same time. If the wheels spin when accelerating on slippery or loose surfaces, the system reduces engine power in order to increase traction.

Note: When you switch the system on or off, a warning lamp illuminates in the instrument cluster. It also illuminates if the system activates or if the system detects a malfunction. See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 61).

USING TRACTION CONTROL



WARNING: The stability and traction control light illuminates steadily if the system detects a failure. Make sure you did not manually disable the traction control system using the information display controls or the switch. If the stability control and traction control light is still illuminating steadily, have the system serviced by an authorized dealer immediately. Operating your vehicle with the traction control disabled could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

If your vehicle is stuck in mud or snow, switching traction control off may be beneficial as this allows the wheels to spin.

Switching the System On and Off



Press the button on the instrument panel below the climate controls.

Note: When you switch the traction control off, stability control remains on.

Note: The system turns on when you switch the ignition on.

Stability Control

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

Electronic Stability Control



WARNING: The system is designed to aid the driver. It is not intended to replace your attention and judgment. You are still responsible to drive with due care and attention.

The system supports stability when your vehicle starts to slide away from your intended path. The system does this by braking individual wheels and reducing engine torque.

The system also provides an enhanced traction control function by reducing engine torque if the wheels spin when you accelerate. This helps to pull away on slippery roads or loose surfaces, and improves comfort by limiting wheel spin in hairpin bends.

Stability Control Warning Lamp

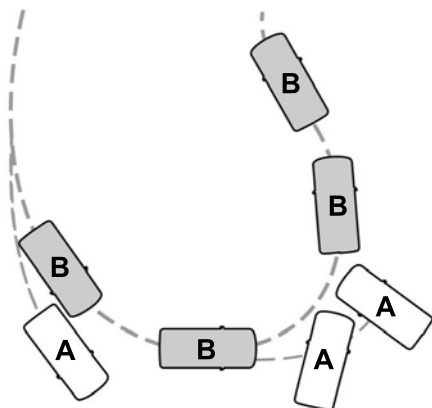


Flashes during operation. See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 61).

USING STABILITY CONTROL

Note: The system automatically turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

You can switch the traction control system off and on. See **Using Traction Control** (page 113).



- A Without ESC.
- B With ESC.

Parking Aids

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION



WARNING: The parking aid system can only assist you to detect objects when your vehicle is moving at parking speeds. To help avoid personal injury you must take care when using the parking aid system.



WARNING: Always drive with due care and attention when using and operating the controls and features on your vehicle.



WARNING: The sensors may not detect objects in heavy rain or other conditions that cause interference.



WARNING: The system may not detect small or moving objects, particularly those close to the ground.



WARNING: The system may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb reflection. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.



WARNING: Only use the Ford approved trailer wiring kit (including the trailer wiring module) when towing with your vehicle. Using generic trailer wiring kits may prevent the correct operation of the rear parking sensors (where fitted) and could damage the electrical systems of your vehicle.

Note: If you use a high pressure spray to wash your vehicle, only spray the sensors briefly from a distance not less than 20 cm (8 in).

Note: If your vehicle has a tow ball arm, the system is turned off automatically when trailer lamps (or lighting boards) are connected to the 13-pin socket through a Ford approved trailer tow module.

Note: Keep the sensors free from dirt, ice or snow. Do not clean with sharp objects.

Note: The system may emit false alerts if it detects a signal using the same frequency as the sensors or if your vehicle is fully loaded.

Note: The outer sensors may detect the side walls of a garage. If the distance between the outer sensors and the side wall remains constant for three seconds, the alert will turn off. As you continue the inner sensors will detect objects directly behind your vehicle.

Note: If your vehicle sustains damage to the bumper or fascia, the sensing zone may be altered causing inaccurate measure of obstacles or false alerts.

REAR PARKING AID



WARNING: The system may not detect small or moving objects, particularly those close to the ground.



WARNING: The system may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb reflection. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.



WARNING: The parking aid system can only assist you to detect objects when your vehicle is moving at parking speeds. To help avoid personal injury you must take care when using the parking aid system.



WARNING: To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse (R) and when using the sensing system.

Parking Aids

Note: Some accessories such as large trailer hitches, bike or surfboard racks can cause reduced performance or false alerts.

Note: Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt. Blocked sensors may affect system accuracy. Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.

Note: If your vehicle sustains damage leaving the sensors misaligned, this will cause inaccurate measurements or false alerts.

The system warns you of objects that are within the detection zone of the bumper areas.

When the parking aid system sounds a tone, the audio system may reduce the set volume. When the warning ends, the audio system will return to the previously set volume.

The rear parking aid sensors automatically turn on when you shift into reverse (R).



- A Coverage area of up to 72 in (183 cm) from the bumper. There is decreased coverage area at the outer corners of the bumper.

As your vehicle moves closer to an obstacle, the rate of the audible warning increases. When the obstacle is less than 30 cm (12 in) away, the audible warning sounds continuously. If a stationary or receding object is detected 30 cm (12 in) or more from the side of your vehicle, the audible warning sounds for only three seconds. Once the system detects an object approaching, the audible warning sounds again.

If a fault is present in the system, a warning message appears in the information display and does not allow you to switch the system on.

FRONT PARKING AID

 **WARNING:** The system may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb reflection. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

 **WARNING:** The system may not detect small or moving objects, particularly those close to the ground.

 **WARNING:** The parking aid system can only assist you to detect objects when your vehicle is moving at parking speeds. To help avoid personal injury you must take care when using the parking aid system.

The sensors are on the front bumper.

Note: Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

Note: Do not cover up the sensors.

Note: Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.

Parking Aids

Note: *If your vehicle sustains damage leaving the sensors misaligned, this may cause inaccurate measurements or false alerts.*



Press the parking aid button to switch the system on.

When the parking aid system sounds a tone, the audio system may reduce the set volume.

A warning tone sounds when an object approaches your vehicle. As your vehicle moves closer to an object, the rate of the tone increases. The warning tone continuously sounds when an object is 30 cm (12 in) or less from the front bumper.

The system turns off when the vehicle speed reaches 12 km/h (7 mph).



Sensor coverage area is up to 70 cm (28 in) from the center of the bumper.

If the transmission is in reverse (R), the system detects objects when your vehicle is moving at low speed or an object is moving toward your vehicle, for example another vehicle at low speed. When you stop your vehicle, the audible warning turns off after two seconds.

If the transmission is in any forward gear, the system provides audible warnings when your vehicle is moving and an object is within the detection area. When you stop your vehicle, the audible warning turns off after two seconds and the visual warning turns off after four seconds.

If the system malfunctions, a message appears in the information display.

Object Distance Indicator (If Equipped)

The system provides object distance indication through the information display.

- As the distance to the object decreases, the indicator blocks illuminate and move toward the vehicle icon.
- If there is no object detected, the distance indicator blocks are gray.

When you shift into reverse (R), the system provides audio warnings and visual indication when your vehicle is moving and the detected object is moving toward your vehicle. When you stop your vehicle, the audio warnings stop after two seconds. Visual indication remains on when the transmission is in reverse (R).

When you shift into any forward gear, the system provides audio warnings and visual indication when your vehicle is moving at a vehicle speed of 12 km/h (7 mph) or below and the system detects an object within the detection zone. When you stop your vehicle, the audio warnings stop after two seconds and visual indication stops after four seconds.

Note: *If the detected object is 30 cm (12 in) or less from your vehicle, visual indication remains on.*

Parking Aids

When you shift into neutral (N), the system only provides visual indication if your vehicle is moving at a vehicle speed of 12 km/h (7 mph) or below, for example, your vehicle is moving on a slope, and the system detects an object moving toward your vehicle. When you stop your vehicle, visual indication stops after four seconds.

Note: The operation of the camera could vary depending on the outside temperature, vehicle and road conditions.

The rear view camera provides an image of the area behind your vehicle. During operation, lines appear in the display that represents the path of your vehicle and proximity to objects behind it.

REAR VIEW CAMERA

WARNING: The rear view camera system is a reverse aid supplement device that still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with the interior and exterior mirrors for maximum coverage.

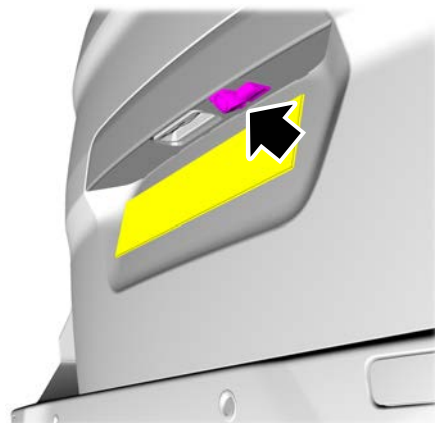
WARNING: Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper, might not be seen on the screen due to the limited coverage of the camera system.

WARNING: Reverse your vehicle slowly. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Use caution when the liftgate is ajar. If the liftgate is ajar, the camera is out of position and the video image could be incorrect. All guide lines disappear when the liftgate is ajar. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

WARNING: Do not switch the camera features on or off when your vehicle is moving.

WARNING: To help avoid personal injury always use caution when in reverse (R) and when using the rear view camera.



E174474

The camera is on the liftgate.

Using the Rear View Camera

The rear view camera system displays what is behind your vehicle when you shift the transmission into reverse (R).

Note: When towing, the camera only sees what you are towing. In some vehicles, the guidelines could disappear when you connect the trailer tow connector.

Parking Aids

The system may not correctly operate in any of the following conditions:

- Nighttime or dark areas if the reverse lamps are not operating.
- If the camera is obstructed. Clean the lens with a soft, lint-free cloth and non-abrasive cleaner.
- The camera is misaligned due to damage to the rear of your vehicle.

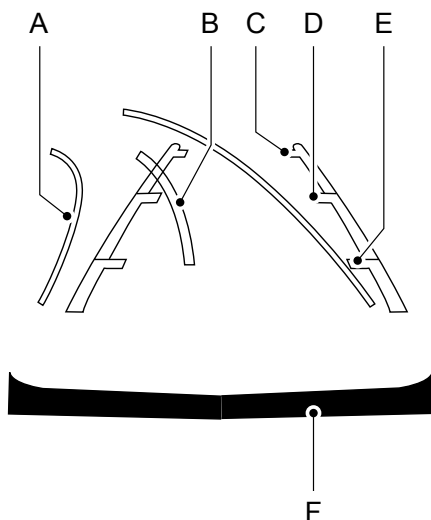
Rear View Camera Guidelines



WARNING: Objects above the camera may not be visible. Check the area behind your vehicle when necessary.

If the vehicle battery is disconnected, the guidelines are not fully functional directly after the battery is reconnected. The guidelines become fully functional after you drive your vehicle as straight as possible for five minutes at a minimum speed of 50 km/h (31 mph).

The system uses three types of guidelines to help you see what is behind your vehicle:



E142436

- A Active guidelines. Show the intended path of your vehicle when reversing.
- B Centerline. Helps you align the center of your vehicle with a trailer.
- C Fixed guidelines. Show the actual path of your vehicle when reversing in a straight line. Green zone.
- D Fixed guidelines. Show the actual path of your vehicle when reversing in a straight line. Yellow zone.

Parking Aids

- E Fixed guidelines. Show the actual path of your vehicle when reversing in a straight line. Red zone.
- F Rear bumper.

Active guidelines are only available with fixed guidelines. To use active guidelines, turn the steering wheel to point the guidelines toward an intended path. If you change the steering wheel position when reversing, your vehicle might deviate from the original intended path.

Note: *Guidelines do not display if the liftgate is open.*

The fixed and active guidelines fade in and out depending on the steering wheel position. When the steering wheel position is straight the active guidelines do not display. Objects in the red zone are closest to your vehicle and objects in the green zone are further from your vehicle.

Manual Zoom



WARNING: When manual zoom is on, the full area behind your vehicle may not show. Be aware of your surroundings when using the manual zoom feature.

Press the zoom in or zoom out symbol to change the view.

Note: *Manual zoom is only available when you shift into reverse (R).*

Note: *The rear bumper remains in the image as a reference point.*

Note: *Only the centerline shows when you switch on manual zoom.*

System Settings

You can adjust the camera settings using the touchscreen. See **Settings** (page 254).

Rear View Camera Delay

You can switch this feature on or off using the touchscreen. The default setting is off. See **Settings** (page 254).

If you switch this feature on, the image continues to display when you shift from reverse (R) until:

- You shift to a forward gear and the vehicle speed sufficiently increases.
- You shift in to park (P).

Enhanced Parking Aids or Park Pilot (if Equipped)

You can switch this feature on or off using the touchscreen. See **Settings** (page 254).

When the reverse sensing system detects an object, it displays red, yellow and green indicators at the top of the image.

Cruise Control

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

Cruise control lets you maintain a set speed without keeping your foot on the accelerator pedal. You can use cruise control when your vehicle speed is greater than 30 km/h (20 mph).

USING CRUISE CONTROL



WARNING: Do not use cruise control on winding roads, in heavy traffic or when the road surface is slippery. This could result in loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death.



WARNING: When you are going downhill, your vehicle speed could increase above the set speed. The system does not apply the brakes.

The cruise controls are on the steering wheel.

Switching Cruise Control On



Press the button. The indicator appears in the information display.

Vehicles with Speed Limiter



Press the button to return to cruise control mode when in speed limiter mode.

Setting the Cruise Speed

Drive to the required speed.



Press the button to set the current speed.

Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

Note: The system cancels if the vehicle speed drops below 16 km/h (10 mph) under the set speed when driving uphill.

Changing the Set Speed



Press the button to increase the set speed.



Press the button to decrease the set speed.

When you select km/h as the display measurement in the information display the set speed changes in approximately 1 km/h increments. When you select mph as the display measurement in the information display the set speed changes in approximately 1 mph increments.

Canceling the Set Speed



Press the button, or tap the brake pedal to cancel the set speed.

Note: The set speed is stored.

Resuming the Set Speed



Press the button to resume the set speed.

Switching Cruise Control Off



Press the button when the system is in standby mode, or switch the ignition off.



Note: You erase the set speed when you switch the system off.

Driving Aids

SPEED LIMITER

Principle of Operation



WARNING: When you are going downhill, your vehicle speed could increase above the set speed. The system does not apply the brakes.



WARNING: The system is designed to aid the driver. It is not intended to replace your attention and judgment. You are still responsible to drive with due care and attention.

The system allows you to set a speed to which your vehicle becomes limited. The set speed sets the effective maximum speed of your vehicle. You can temporarily exceed the set speed if required, for example to overtake.

Using Speed Limiter

The controls are on the steering wheel.

Switching the System On and Off

LIM

Press to set the system in standby mode. Press again to switch the system off.

Setting the Speed Limiter

SET+

Press with the system in standby mode to set the speed limiter to the current vehicle speed. Press

SET-

again to set the desired speed limit. The set speed is stored and displayed in the information

display.

Canceling the Set Speed

CAN

Press to cancel the set speed limiter. The system returns to standby mode.

Resuming the Set Speed

RES

Press to resume the set speed limiter.

Intentionally Exceeding the Speed Limit

Firmly press the accelerator pedal to temporarily exceed the set speed limit. The system resumes when the vehicle speed drops below the set speed limit.

System Warnings

If you intentionally exceed the set speed, a warning appears in the information display.

If you unintentionally exceed the set speed, for example when you are going downhill, a warning appears in the information display and a tone sounds.

Load Carrying

LOAD CARRYING PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Make sure that you properly secure objects in the luggage compartment. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury in the event of a sudden stop or crash.



WARNING: Do not place objects on the luggage cover. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.



WARNING: The appropriate loading capacity of your vehicle can be limited either by volume capacity (how much space is available) or by payload capacity (how much weight the vehicle should carry). Once you have reached the maximum payload of your vehicle, do not add more cargo, even if there is space available. Overloading or improperly loading your vehicle can contribute to loss of vehicle control and vehicle rollover.



WARNING: Make sure that you fully close the liftgate to prevent exhaust fumes from entering your vehicle. If you are unable to fully close the liftgate, open the air vents or the windows to allow fresh air to enter your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not exceed the maximum front and rear axle loads for your vehicle.

Note: When loading long objects into your vehicle, for example pipes, timber or furniture be careful not to damage the interior trim.

ROOF RACK

ROOF RACK PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions when you are fitting a roof rack.



WARNING: When loading the roof racks, we recommend you evenly distribute the load, as well as maintain a low center of gravity. Loaded vehicles, with higher centers of gravity, may handle differently than unloaded vehicles. Take extra precautions, such as slower speeds and increased stopping distance, when driving a heavily loaded vehicle.

For correct roof rack system function, you must place loads directly on crossbars fitted to the roof rack side rails.

Note: Never place loads directly on the roof panel.

Make sure that you securely fasten the load. Check to make sure the straps are secure before driving and at each fuel stop.

REMOVING AND INSTALLING ROOF RACK CROSSBARS



WARNING: Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions when you are fitting a roof rack.

When using the roof rack system, we recommend that you use genuine Ford accessory crossbars specifically designed for your vehicle.

Load Carrying

ROOF RACK LOAD CAPACITIES

Maximum Roof Load (Including Roof Rack) kg (lb)	
Transit - Excluding: Sport Van	60 (132)
Transit - Sport Van	40 (88)
Tourneo	45 (99)

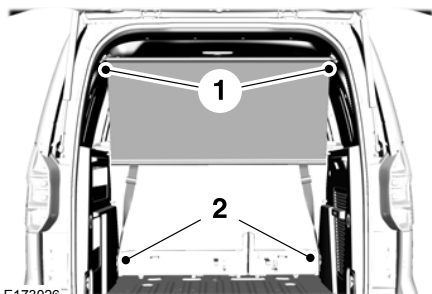
Rear Cargo Area

INSTALLING AND REMOVING THE REAR CARGO NET

Note: The cargo net can only be placed behind the second row seat.

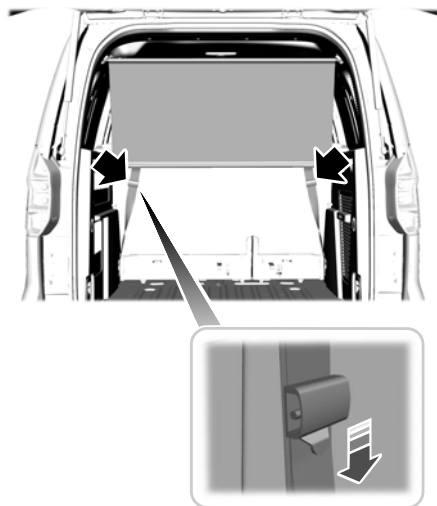
Note: The cargo net cannot be used in conjunction with a tonneau cover.

Installing the Cargo Net



E173026

1. Push the ends of the upper bar toward each other and insert them into the retainers near the roof. Push the bar forward into the narrow section of the retainers.
2. Attach the net to the luggage anchor points.

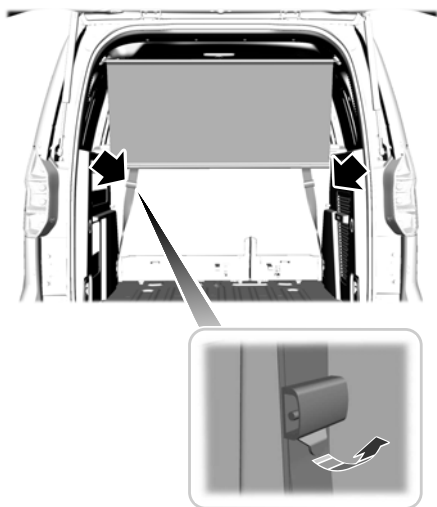


E173027

3. Tighten the straps.

Rear Cargo Area

Removing the Cargo Net



E173028

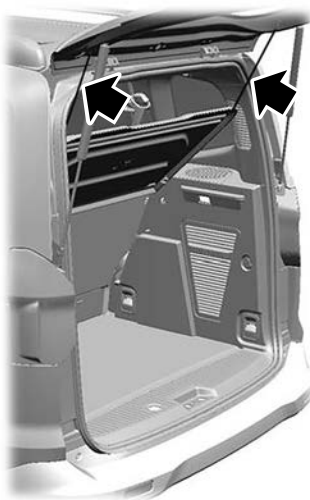
1. Release the straps.
2. Remove the net from the luggage anchor points.
3. Remove the upper bars.

INSTALLING AND REMOVING THE REAR CARGO LUGGAGE COVER



WARNING: Do not place objects on the luggage cover. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.

Removing the Cover



E269210

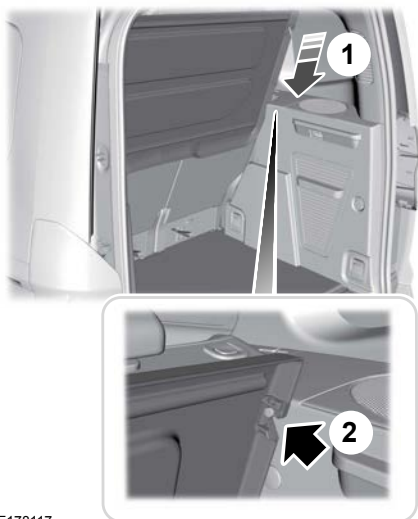
1. Remove the luggage cover cords.



E291498

2. Lift the luggage cover to unclip and rotate it by 180 degrees.

Rear Cargo Area

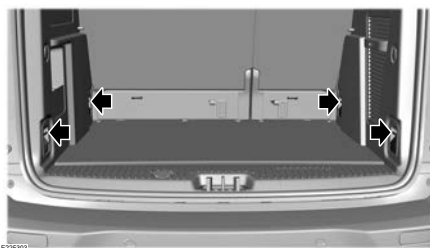


E178117

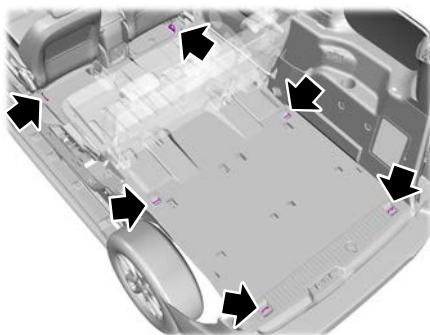
3. Slide the luggage cover behind the back row seat.
4. Clip the luggage cover into place.
5. To install, reverse the removal procedure

REAR CARGO AREA ANCHOR POINTS

LOCATING THE REAR CARGO AREA ANCHOR POINTS - TOURNEO



LOCATING THE REAR CARGO AREA ANCHOR POINTS - TRANSIT



E167350

Rear Cargo Area

REAR CARGO AREA ANCHOR POINT LOAD CAPACITIES - TOURNEO

Maximum Load Value
3,000 N (675 lb)

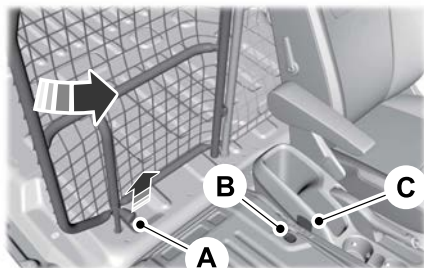
REAR CARGO AREA ANCHOR POINT LOAD CAPACITIES - TRANSIT

Maximum Load Value
3,500 N (785 lb)

Adjusting the Bulkhead

Pull up on the release pin (A) and fold the bulkhead toward the center console. You can secure the bulkhead partially closed by dropping the pin into the slot on the seat (B). You can fully close the bulkhead by pulling it to the center console (C).

INSTALLING AND REMOVING THE BULKHEAD



E177409

- A Fully open.
- B Partially closed.
- C Fully closed.

Folding the Bulkhead

Fold the passenger seat to its full forward flat position.

TOWING A TRAILER



WARNING: Do not exceed 62 mph (100 km/h). This could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.



WARNING: The rear tire pressures must be increased by 3 psi (0.2 bar) above specification. Do not exceed the maximum pressure stated on the tire sidewall. This could cause serious personal injury. See **Wheels and Tires** (page 170).



WARNING: Do not exceed the maximum gross train weight stated on your vehicle identification plate. This could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death. See **Vehicle Identification Plate** (page 192).



WARNING: Do not exceed the maximum permissible trailer nose weight (vertical weight on the tow ball) as stated in the vehicle specification chart. This could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 190).



WARNING: The anti-lock braking system does not control the overrun brake on the trailer. This could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.

When towing a trailer:

- Obey country specific regulations for towing a trailer.
- Do not exceed 62 mph (100 km/h) even if a country allows higher speeds under certain conditions.
- Place loads as low as possible and central to the axle of your trailer. If you are towing with an unladen vehicle, the load in your trailer should be placed toward the nose, within the maximum nose load, as this gives the best stability. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 190).
- The trailer nose weight (vertical weight on the tow ball), is essential for the driving stability of your vehicle and trailer.
- The vertical weight on the tow ball should be at least 4% of the trailer weight and not exceed the maximum permissible weight. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 190).
- Reduce speed immediately if the trailer shows any sign of swaying.
- Use a low gear when descending a steep downhill gradient.

Note: *The maximum permissible trailer nose weight on the trailer identification plate is the trailer manufacturer's testing value. The vehicle maximum permissible trailer nose weight may be lower.*

The stability of your vehicle to trailer combination is very much dependent on the quality of the trailer.

Towing a trailer changes the vehicle handling characteristics and increases stopping distances. Adapt your speed and driving behavior to the load of the trailer.

The gross train weight stated on the vehicle identification plate applies for road gradients up to 12% and altitudes up to 3281 feet (1000 meters) when towing a trailer. In mountainous regions the engine performance decreases due to lower air density with increasing altitude. In high altitude regions above 3281 feet (1000 metres), the stipulated maximum permitted gross train weight must be reduced by 10% for every extra 3281 feet (1000 metres).

Towing

Note: *Not all vehicles are suitable or approved to have tow bars fitted. See an authorized dealer for further information.*

Trailer Lighting

The electrical system on your vehicle is not suitable for towing trailers with LED lamps.

TOWING THE VEHICLE ON FOUR WHEELS



WARNING: You must switch the ignition on when your vehicle is being towed. Failure to follow this warning could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.



WARNING: The brake and steering assistance will not operate unless the engine is running. Press the brake pedal harder and be aware of increased stopping distances and heavier steering.



WARNING: If your vehicle has a steering wheel lock make sure the ignition is in the accessory or on position when being towed.



WARNING: Too much tension on a tow rope could cause damage to your vehicle or the vehicle that is towing.



WARNING: When towing your vehicle you must select neutral. Failure to follow this warning could damage the transmission and may lead to a crash or injury.

Tow ropes or rigid towing bars must be placed on the same side. For example; right hand rear towing point to right hand front towing point.

You must use a tow rope or rigid towing bar that is of the correct strength for the weight of the towing vehicle and the vehicle that is being towed.

The weight of the vehicle that is being towed must not exceed the weight of the towing vehicle.

Do not exceed 50 km/h (31 mph). See **Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels** (page 130).

Drive off slowly and smoothly without jerking the vehicle you are towing.

You must only use the towing eye that was delivered with your vehicle. See **Towing Points** (page 136).

REDUCED ENGINE PERFORMANCE



WARNING: If you continue to drive your vehicle when the engine is overheating, the engine could stop without warning. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle.

If the engine coolant temperature gauge needle moves to the upper limit position, the engine is overheating. See **Gauges** (page 59).

You must only drive your vehicle for a short distance if the engine overheats. The distance you can travel depends on ambient temperature, vehicle load and terrain. The engine continues to operate with limited power for a short period of time.

If the engine temperature continues to rise, the fuel supply to the engine reduces. The air conditioning switches off and the engine cooling fan operates continually.

1. Gradually reduce your speed and stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
2. Immediately switch the engine off to prevent severe engine damage.
3. Wait for the engine to cool down.
4. Check the coolant level. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 155).
5. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

ECONOMICAL DRIVING

The following helps to improve fuel consumption:

- Regularly check your tire pressures and make sure that they are inflated to the correct pressure. See **Tire Pressures** (page 186).
- Follow the recommended maintenance schedule and carry out the recommended checks.
- Plan your journey and check the traffic before you set off.
- Avoid idling the engine in cold weather or for extended periods. Start the engine only when you are ready to set off.
- Do not carry unnecessary weight in your vehicle as extra weight wastes fuel.
- Do not add unnecessary accessories to the exterior of your vehicle, for example running boards. If you use a roof rack, remember to fold it down or remove it when not in use.
- Drive smoothly, accelerate gently and anticipate the road ahead to avoid heavy braking.
- Switch off all electric systems when not in use, for example air conditioning. Make sure that you unplug any accessories from the auxiliary power points when not in use.

COLD WEATHER PRECAUTIONS

The functional operation of some components and systems can be affected at temperatures below approximately -25°C (-13°F).

Driving Hints

BREAKING-IN

Tires

New tires need to be run-in for approximately 500 km (300 mi). During this time, you may experience different driving characteristics.

Brakes and Clutch

Avoid heavy use of the brakes and clutch if possible for the first 150 km (100 mi) in town and for the first 1,500 km (1,000 mi) on freeways.

Engine

Avoid driving too fast during the first 1,500 km (1,000 mi). Vary your speed frequently and change up through the gears early. Do not labor the engine.

Vehicles With a Diesel Engine

During the first 3,000 km (2,000 mi), you may notice a ticking sound when your vehicle slows down. This is due to adjustments of your new diesel engine and is normal.



When driving through standing water, drive very slowly and do not stop your vehicle. Your brake performance and traction may be limited. After driving through water and as soon as it is safe to do so:

- Lightly press the brake pedal to dry the brakes and to check that they work.
- Check that the horn works.
- Check that the exterior lights work.
- Turn the steering wheel to check that the steering power assist works.

FLOOR MATS

DRIVING THROUGH WATER



WARNING: Do not drive through flowing or deep water as you may lose control of your vehicle.

Note: *Driving through standing water can cause vehicle damage.*

Note: *Engine damage can occur if water enters the air filter.*

Before driving through standing water, check the depth. Never drive through water that is higher than the bottom of the front rocker area of your vehicle.



WARNING: Use a floor mat designed to fit the footwell of your vehicle that does not obstruct the pedal area. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Pedals that cannot move freely can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injury.

Driving Hints



WARNING: Secure the floor mat to both retention devices so that it cannot slip out of position and interfere with the pedals. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not place additional floor mats or any other covering on top of the original floor mats. This could result in the floor mat interfering with the operation of the pedals. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Always make sure that objects cannot fall into the driver foot well while your vehicle is moving. Objects that are loose can become trapped under the pedals causing a loss of vehicle control.

Note: Regularly check the floor mats to make sure they are secure.



To install floor mats that have eyelets, position the floor mat eyelet over the retention post and press down to lock in position. Repeat for all eyelets on the floor mat.

To remove the floor mats, reverse the installation procedure.

Roadside Emergencies

HAZARD FLASHERS



The hazard flasher switch is on the instrument panel.

Use the hazard flashers if your vehicle is creating a safety hazard for other road users.

Switching the Hazard Flashers On or Off



Press the button to switch the hazard flashers on.

Press the button again to switch the hazard flashers off.

Note: All direction indicators flash.

Note: Prolonged use of the hazard flashers could cause the vehicle battery to run out of charge.

Note: Depending on applicable laws in the country your vehicle was built for, if you heavily brake, the hazard flashers could turn on.

Hazard Flasher Indicator



Flashes when you switch the hazard flashers on.

FIRST AID KIT

The first aid kit can be stowed under the front passenger seat or in the luggage compartment.

WARNING TRIANGLE

The warning triangle can be stowed under the front passenger seat.

FUEL SHUTOFF



WARNING: If your vehicle has been involved in a crash, have the fuel system checked. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.

In the event of a moderate to severe collision, this vehicle includes a fuel pump shutoff feature that stops the flow of fuel to the engine. Not every impact will cause a shutoff.

Should your vehicle shut off after a collision, you may restart your vehicle. For vehicles equipped with a key system:

1. Switch off the ignition.
2. Switch to start position.
3. Switch off the ignition.
4. Switch on the ignition to re-enable the fuel pump.

For vehicles equipped with a push button start system:

1. Press the **START/STOP** button to switch off the ignition.
2. Press the brake pedal and press the **START/STOP** button to switch on the ignition.
3. Remove your foot from the brake pedal and press the **START/STOP** button to switch off the ignition.
4. You can either attempt to start the engine by pressing the brake pedal and the **START/STOP** button, or switch on the ignition only by pressing the **START/STOP** button without pressing the brake pedal. Both ways re-enable the fuel system.

Roadside Emergencies

Note: When you try to restart your vehicle after a fuel shutoff, the vehicle makes sure that various systems are safe to restart. Once your vehicle determines that the systems are safe, then the vehicle will allow you to restart.

Note: In the event that your vehicle does not restart after your third attempt, contact an authorized dealer.

JUMP STARTING THE VEHICLE

Do not disconnect the battery.

Connecting the Jumper Cables



WARNING: Do not use fuel lines, engine valve covers, windshield wiper arms, the intake manifold, or hood latch as ground points.



WARNING: Connect batteries with only the same nominal voltage.



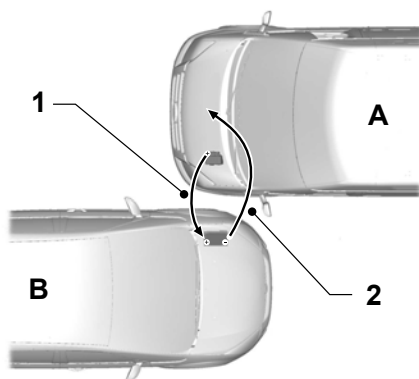
WARNING: Use only adequately sized cables with insulated clamps.



WARNING: Do not connect the end of the second cable to the negative (-) terminal of the battery to be jumped. A spark may cause an explosion of the gases that surround the battery.



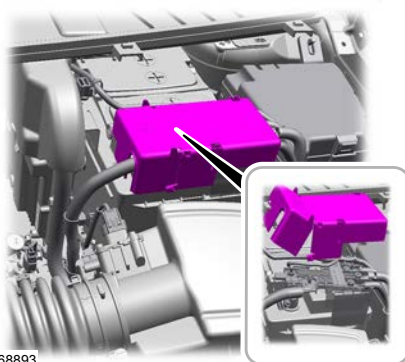
WARNING: Make sure that the cables are clear of any moving parts and fuel delivery system parts.



E75524

- A Flat battery vehicle.
B Booster battery vehicle.
1 Positive connection cable.
2 Negative connection cable.

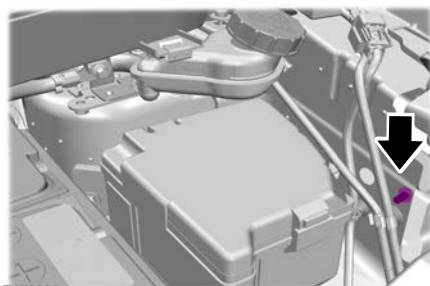
1. Position the vehicles so that they do not touch one another.
2. Switch the ignition and any electrical equipment off.



E268893

Roadside Emergencies

3. Lift up the battery positive connection point cover. For item location, refer to the appropriate under hood overview. See **Under Hood Overview** (page 150).
4. Connect the positive (+) terminal of vehicle B with the positive (+) terminal of vehicle A (cable 1).



E173305

5. Connect the negative (-) terminal of vehicle B to the Jump start stud of vehicle A (cable 2).

To Start the Engine

1. Run the engine of vehicle B at a moderately high engine speed.
2. Start the engine of vehicle A.
3. Run both vehicles for a minimum of three minutes before disconnecting the cables.
4. Disconnect the cables in the reverse order.

Note: Do not switch the headlamps on when disconnecting the cables. The peak voltage could blow the bulbs.

TOWING POINTS

Front Towing Point



WARNING: Make sure that the towing eye is fully tightened. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: You must switch the ignition on when your vehicle is being towed.



E152070

1. Gently press the towing eye attachment point cover at the position indicated.
2. Gently pull it straight out.

Note: The towing eye attachment point cover has a small lanyard to keep it attached to the bumper.

Roadside Emergencies

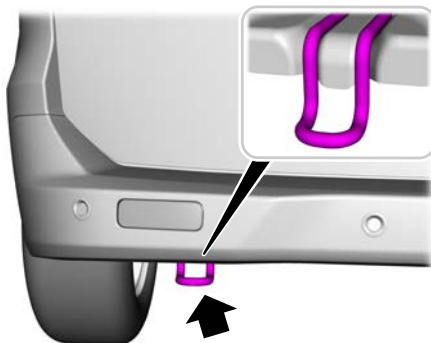


E152071

3. Install the towing eye.

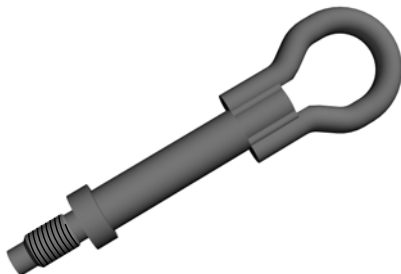
Note: It has a left-hand thread. Turn it counterclockwise to install it.

Rear Towing Point

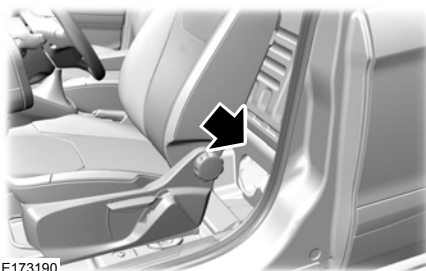


E174389

Towing Eye Location

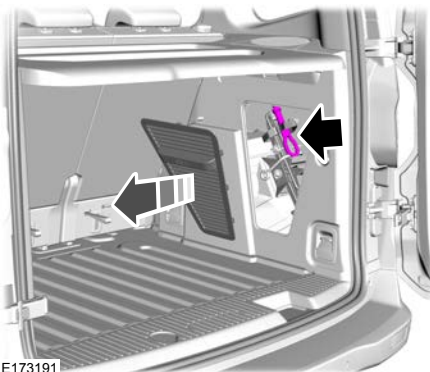


Van



E173190

Kombi and Tourneo



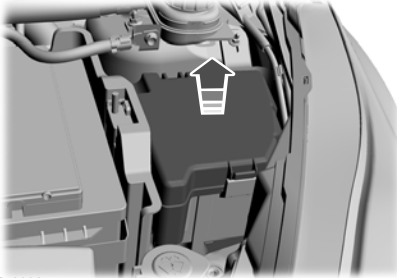
E173191

Note: You must carry the towing eye in your vehicle at all times.

Fuses

FUSE BOX LOCATIONS

Engine Compartment Fuse Box



E78332

Passenger Compartment Fuse Box

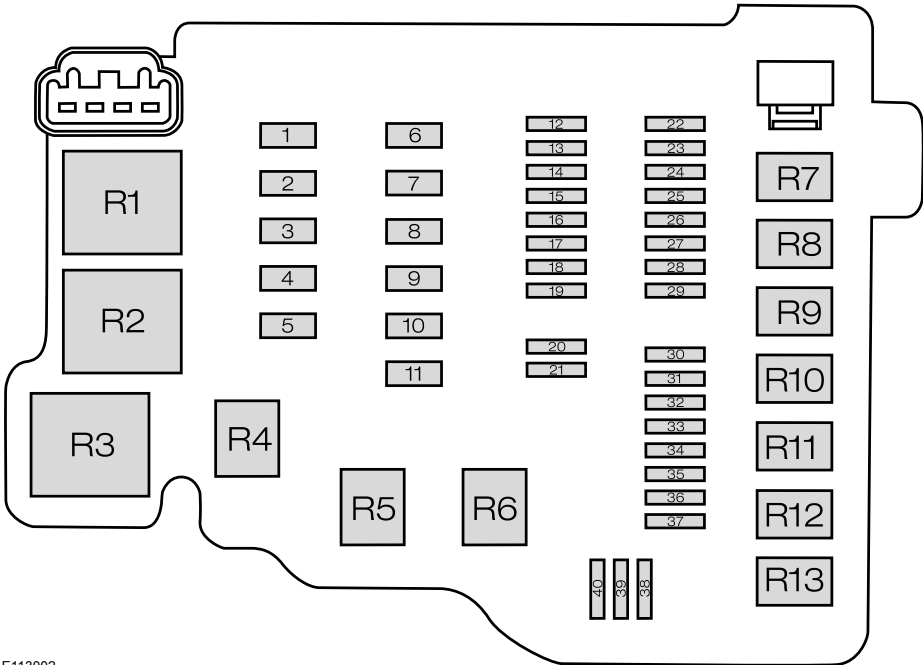
The fuse box is behind the glove compartment.

1. Open the glove compartment and empty the contents.
2. Press the sides inward and swivel the glove compartment downward.

Fuses

FUSE SPECIFICATION CHART

Engine Compartment Fuse Box



E113002

Fuse Location	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
F1	30 A	Anti-lock brake system.
F2	60 A	Cooling fan.
F3	30 A	Cooling fan.
	40 A	
F4	30 A	Blower motor.
F5	60 A	Passenger compartment fuse box supply.
F6	30 A	Central locking system.

Fuses

Fuse Location	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
F7	60 A	Ignition relay.
F8	60 A	Glow plugs.
F9	60 A	Heated windshield.
F10	60 A	Selective catalytic reduction system.
F11	30 A	Starter motor.
F12	10 A	Left-hand high beam.
F13	10 A	Right-hand high beam.
F14	15 A	Water pump - gasoline.
		Nitrogen oxides sensor - diesel.
F15	20 A	Ignition coil - gasoline.
	15 A	Active grille shutter - diesel. Oil pump - diesel. Air conditioning compressor - diesel.
F16	15 A	Powertrain control module - gasoline.0
		Heated oxygen sensor - diesel. Exhaust gas recirculation cooler bypass valve - diesel. Wastegate control valve solenoid - diesel. Water-in-fuel sensor - diesel.
F17	15 A	Heated oxygen sensor - gasoline.
F17	15 A	Powertrain control module - diesel.
F18	15 A	Particulate matter sensor - diesel.
F19	15 A	Air conditioning compressor - gasoline.
F20	-	Not used.
F21	-	Not used.
F22	20 A	Fuel delivery module - diesel.
F23	15 A	Front fog lamps.
F24	15 A	Direction indicators.
F25	15 A	Left-hand exterior lamps.

Fuses

Fuse Location	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
F26	15 A	Right-hand exterior lamps.
F27	7.5 A	Powertrain control module.
F28	20 A	Anti-lock brake system.
F29	10 A	Air conditioning clutch.
F30	-	Not used.
F31	7.5 A	Nitrogen oxides sensor relay coil supply - diesel.
F32	20 A	Horn.
F33	20 A	Heated rear window.
F34	20 A	Fuel pump. Fuel heater.
F35	15 A	Anti-theft alarm.
F36	-	Not used.
F37	20 A	Powertrain control module - diesel.
F38	-	Not used.
F39	-	Not used.
F40	-	Not used.

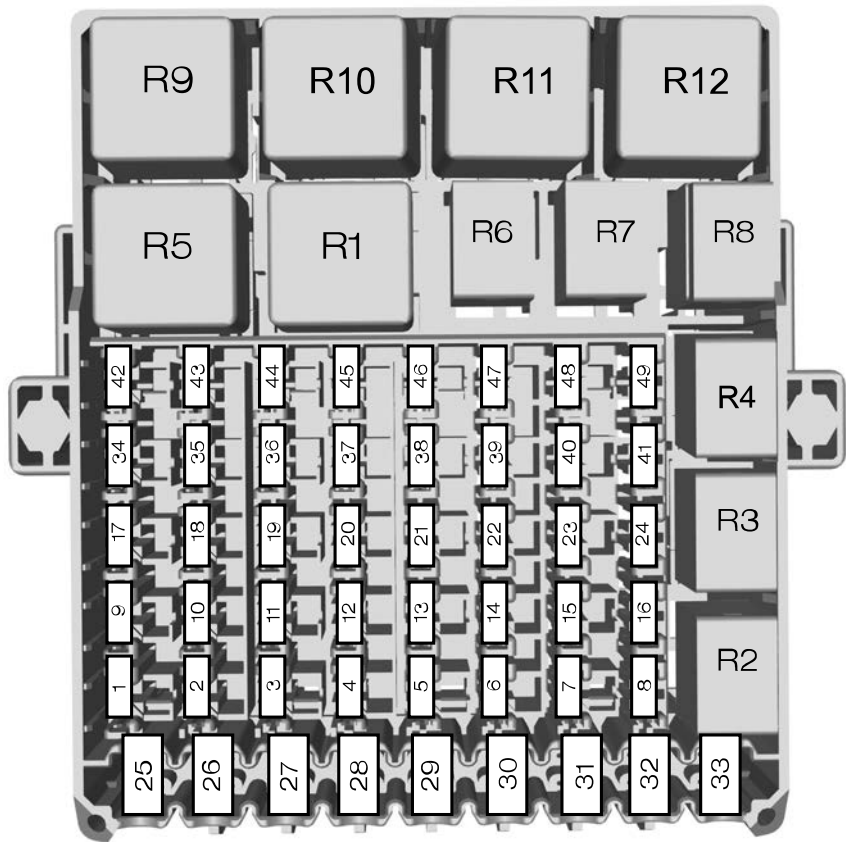
Relay Number	Protected Component
R1	Cooling fan.
R2	Glow plugs.
R3	Powertrain control module.
R4	High beam.
R5	Not used.
R6	Nitrogen oxides sensor - diesel.
R7	Cooling fan.
R8	Starter motor.
R9	Air conditioning clutch.

Fuses

Relay Number	Protected Component
R10	Front fog lamps.
R11	Fuel pump. Fuel heater.
R12	Powertrain control module - diesel. Reversing lamp - diesel.
R13	Blower motor.

Fuses

Passenger Compartment Fuse Box



E173109

Fuse Location	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
F1	7.5 A	Heated windshield. Blower motor. Rain sensor module. Auto-dimming interior mirror.

Fuses

Fuse Location	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
		Front interior lamp.
F2	10 A	Stoplamp switch.
F3	5 A	Reversing lamps. Rear parking aid camera.
F4	10 A	Windshield heated washer jets. Headlamp leveling.
F5	7.5 A	Exterior mirrors.
F6	15 A	Rear window wiper.
F7	15 A	Windshield washer pump.
F8	3 A	USB charger.
F9	15 A	Passenger heated seat.
F10	15 A	Driver heated seat.
F11	-	Not used.
F12	10 A	Airbag module.
F13	10 A	Blower motor relay. Engine immobilizer. Electronic power assist steering. Instrument panel cluster.
F14	7.5 A	Powertrain control module. Fuel pump. Accelerator pedal position sensor.
F15	7.5 A	Audio unit. Instrument panel cluster.
F16	-	Not used.
F17	7.5 A	Selective catalytic reduction system.
F18	10 A	Passenger airbag deactivation indicator.
F19	10 A	Data link connector.
F20	20 A	Trailer tow module.
F21	15 A	Audio unit.
F22	7.5 A	Instrument cluster.

Fuses

Fuse Location	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
F23	7.5 A	Front control/display interface module. Air conditioning control module.
F24	15 A	SYNC module.
F25	30 A	Power windows.
F26	30 A	Windshield wipers.
F27	-	Not used.
F28	30 A	Voltage quality module.
F29	20 A	Rear auxiliary power points.
F30	20 A	Cigar lighter socket. Front auxiliary power points.
F31	-	Not used.
F32	30 A	Left-hand heated windshield element.
F33	30 A	Right-hand heated windshield element.
F34	20 A	Central locking system.
F35	-	Not used.
F36	10 A	Heated exterior mirrors.
F37	15 A	Ignition switch.
F38	7.5 A	Anti-theft alarm.
F39	25 A	Driver door module.
F40	25 A	Passenger door module.
F41	-	Not used.
F42	7.5 A	Rear parking aid camera.
F43	-	Not used.
F44	-	Not used.
F45	10 A	Heated exterior mirrors.
F46	-	Not used.

Fuses

Fuse Location	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
F47	20 A	Dosing control unit.
F48	20 A	Dosing control unit.
F49	15 A	Dosing control unit.

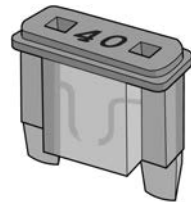
Relay Number	Protected Component
R1	Ignition.
R2	Cigar lighter socket. Front auxiliary power points.
R3	Central locking system.
R4	Heated exterior mirrors.
R5	Selective catalytic reduction system.
R6	Not used.
R7	Not used.
R8	Rear auxiliary power points.
R9	Heated windshield.
R10	Not used.
R11	Windshield washer pump.
R12	Windshield washer pump.

CHANGING A FUSE

Fuses



WARNING: Always replace a fuse with one that has the specified amperage rating. Using a fuse with a higher amperage rating can cause severe wire damage and could start a fire.



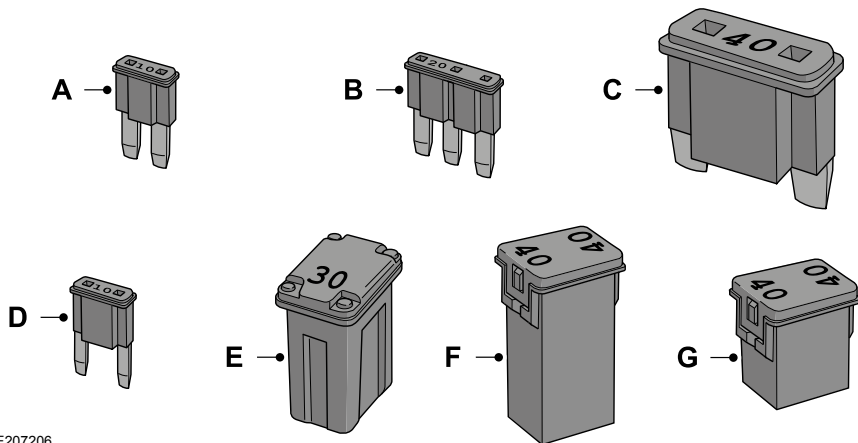
E217331

Fuses

If electrical components in the vehicle are not working, a fuse may have blown. Blown fuses are identified by a broken wire within

the fuse. Check the appropriate fuses before replacing any electrical components.

Fuse Types



E207206

Callout	Fuse Type
A	Micro 2
B	Micro 3
C	Maxi
D	Mini
E	M Case
F	J Case
G	J Case Low Profile

Maintenance

GENERAL INFORMATION



WARNING: Do not work on a hot engine.



WARNING: Switch the ignition off and apply the parking brake.



WARNING: Do not touch the electronic ignition system parts after you have switched the ignition on or when the engine is running. The system operates at high voltage. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.



WARNING: Keep your hands and clothing clear of the engine cooling fan.

Under certain conditions, the engine cooling fan may continue to run for several minutes after you switch your vehicle off. See **Engine Cooling Fan** (page 155).

Make sure that you fit filler caps securely after carrying out maintenance checks.

We recommend that you carry out the following checks.

Check Daily

- Exterior lamps.
- Interior lamps.
- Warning lamps and indicators.

Check When Refueling

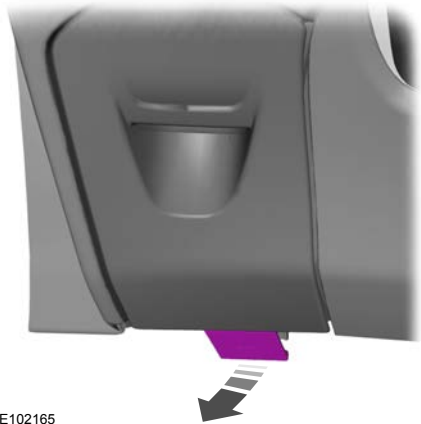
- Washer fluid level. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 159).
- Tire pressures. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 159).
- Tire condition. See **Wheels and Tires** (page 170).

Check Monthly

- Engine oil level. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 154).
- Engine coolant level. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 155).
- Brake fluid level. See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 156).
- Pipes, hoses and reservoirs for leaks.
- Air conditioning operation.
- Parking brake operation.
- Horn operation.
- Tightness of lug nuts. See **Lug Nuts** (page 189).

OPENING AND CLOSING THE HOOD

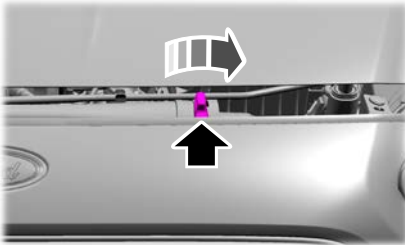
Opening the Hood



E102165

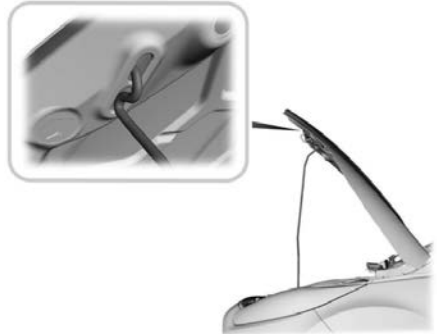
1. Pull the hood release lever.
2. Slightly lift the hood.

Maintenance



E268373

3. Move the catch to the right.
4. Open the hood.



E87786

5. Support the hood with the strut.

Note: Hold the yellow section of the hood strut.

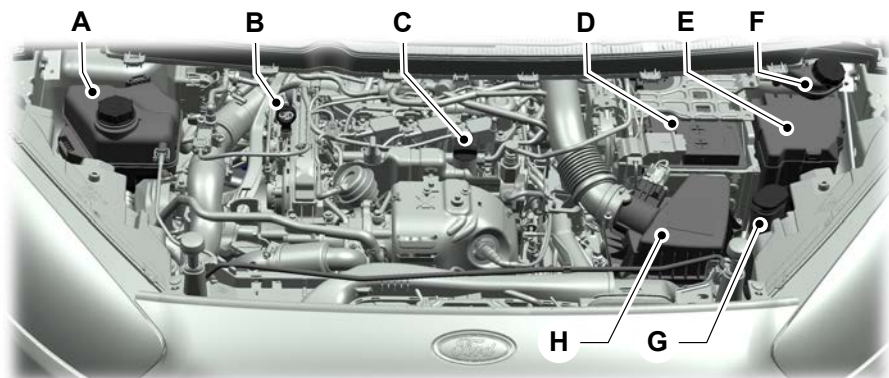
Closing the Hood

1. Remove the strut from the catch and secure it correctly in the clip.
2. Lower the hood and allow it to drop under its own weight for the last 20–30 cm (8–12 in).

Note: Make sure that the hood is correctly closed.

Maintenance

UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 1.0L ECOBOOST™, LHD

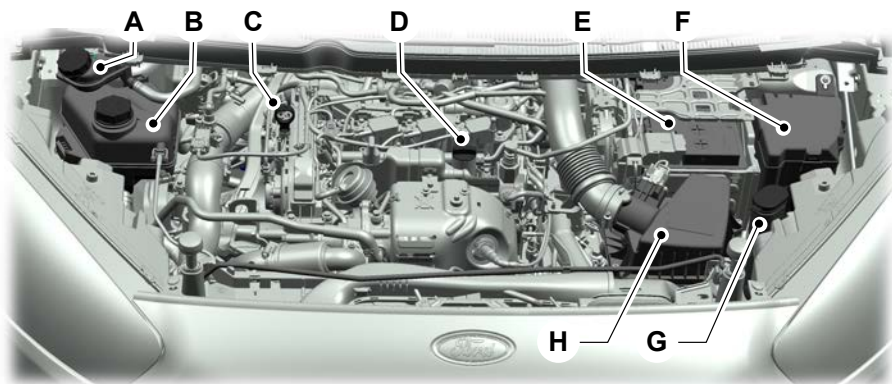


E269831

- A Engine coolant reservoir. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 155).
- B Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick** (page 154).
- C Engine oil filler cap. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 154).
- D Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 157).
- E Engine compartment fuse box. See **Fuse Specification Chart** (page 139).
- F Brake fluid reservoir. See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 156).
- G Windshield and rear window washer reservoir. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 159).
- H Air filter.

Maintenance

UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 1.0L ECOBOOST™, RHD

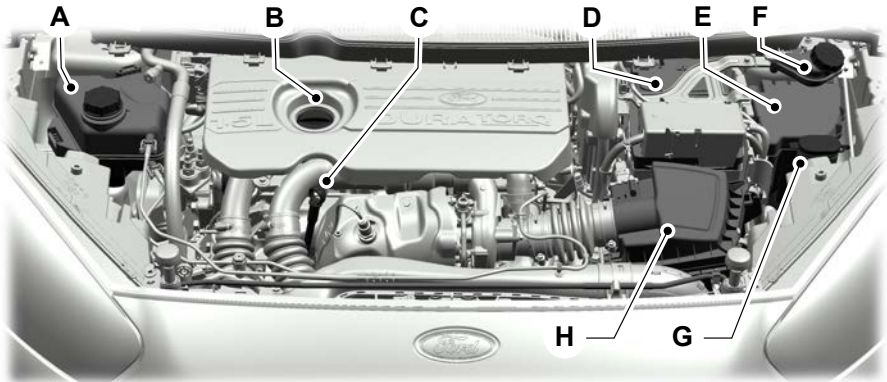


E269832

- A Brake fluid reservoir. See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 156).
- B Engine coolant reservoir. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 155).
- C Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick** (page 154).
- D Engine oil filler cap. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 154).
- E Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 157).
- F Engine compartment fuse box. See **Fuse Specification Chart** (page 139).
- G Windshield and rear window washer reservoir. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 159).
- H Air filter.

Maintenance

UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 1.5L DURATORQ-TDCI DIESEL, LHD

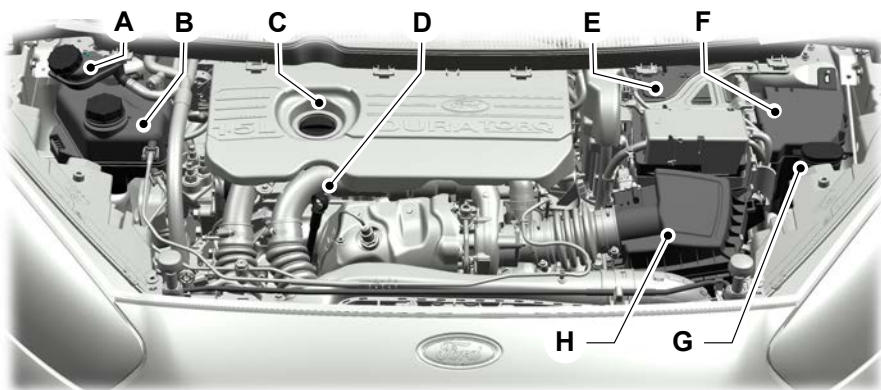


E269833

- A Engine coolant reservoir. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 155).
- B Engine oil filler cap. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 154).
- C Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick** (page 154).
- D Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 157).
- E Engine compartment fuse box. See **Fuse Specification Chart** (page 139).
- F Brake fluid reservoir. See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 156).
- G Windshield and rear window washer reservoir. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 159).
- H Air filter.

Maintenance

UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 1.5L DURATORQ-TDCI DIESEL, RHD

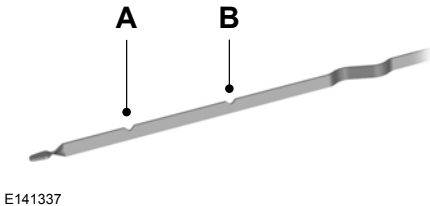


E269834

- A Brake fluid reservoir. See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 156).
- B Engine coolant reservoir. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 155).
- C Engine oil filler cap. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 154).
- D Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick** (page 154).
- E Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 157).
- F Engine compartment fuse box. See **Fuse Specification Chart** (page 139).
- G Windshield and rear window washer reservoir. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 159).
- H Air filter.

Maintenance

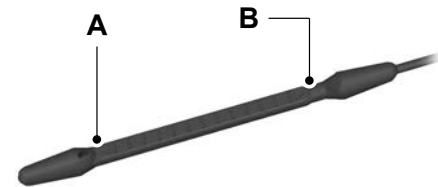
ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK - 1.0L ECOBOOST™



E141337

- A Minimum.
B Maximum.

ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK - 1.5L DURATORQ-TDCI DIESEL



E140423

- A Minimum.
B Maximum.

ENGINE OIL CHECK

1. Make sure that your vehicle is on level ground.
2. Check the oil level before starting the engine, or switch the engine off and wait 10 minutes for the oil to drain into the oil pan.
3. Remove the dipstick and wipe it with a clean, lint-free cloth.

4. Reinstall the dipstick and make sure it is fully seated.
5. Remove the dipstick again to check the oil level.

Note: If the oil level is between the maximum and minimum marks, the oil level is acceptable. Do not add oil.

6. If the oil level is at the minimum mark, immediately add oil.
7. Reinstall the dipstick. Make sure it is fully seated.

Note: The oil consumption of new engines reaches its normal level after approximately 5,000 km (3,000 mi).

Adding Engine Oil



WARNING: Do not add engine oil when the engine is hot. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: Do not remove the filler cap when the engine is running.

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives because they are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that the vehicle warranty may not cover.

1. Clean the area surrounding the engine oil filler cap before you remove it.
2. Remove the engine oil filler cap.
3. Add engine oil that meets our specifications. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 190).
4. Reinstall the engine oil filler cap. Turn it clockwise until you feel a strong resistance.

Note: Do not add oil further than the maximum mark. Oil levels above the maximum mark may cause engine damage.

Note: Immediately soak up any oil spillage with an absorbent cloth.

Maintenance

ENGINE COOLING FAN - GASOLINE



WARNING: Keep your hands and clothing clear of the engine cooling fan.

Under certain conditions, the engine cooling fan may continue to run for several minutes after you switch your vehicle off.

ENGINE COOLING FAN - DIESEL



WARNING: Keep your hands and clothing clear of the engine cooling fan.

Under certain conditions, the engine cooling fan may continue to run for several minutes after you switch your vehicle off. This could happen in low ambient temperatures and independent of the engine coolant temperature, for example short journeys or low coolant temperature. See **Diesel Particulate Filter** (page 107).

ENGINE COOLANT CHECK



WARNING: Do not dispose of coolant in the household refuse or the public sewage system. Use an authorized waste disposal facility.



WARNING: Do not put coolant in the windshield washer reservoir. If sprayed on the windshield, coolant could make it difficult to see through the windshield.



Make sure that the coolant level is between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks on the coolant reservoir at ambient temperature. If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, immediately add coolant.

The coolant concentration should be maintained within 48% to 50%, which equates to a freeze point between -34°C (-29°F) and -37°C (-35°F).

Note: Coolant expands when it is hot. The level may extend beyond the **MAX** mark.

Note: Do not use stop leak pellets, cooling system sealants, or non-specified additives as they can cause damage to the engine cooling or heating systems.

Maintenance

Adding Coolant



WARNING: Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your physician.



WARNING: Undiluted coolant is flammable and may ignite if spilled on a hot exhaust.

We do not recommend the use of recycled engine coolant since a Ford-approved recycling process is not yet available.

Do not mix different colors or types of coolant in your vehicle.

Note: Add a 50/50 mixture of antifreeze and water or prediluted engine coolant that meets the correct specification.

Note: Use fluids which meet the specifications or requirements defined. Use of other fluids may lead to damage which is not covered by the vehicle Warranty. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 190).

To top up the coolant level do the following:

1. Remove the coolant reservoir cap.
2. Add coolant to the **MAX** mark, do not overfill.
3. Replace the coolant reservoir cap. Turn it clockwise until you feel a strong resistance.

In case of emergency, you can add water without engine coolant in order to reach a vehicle service location.

Note: Prolonged use of an incorrect dilution of coolant can cause damage, for example corrosion, overheating or freezing.

BRAKE FLUID CHECK



WARNING: Do not use any fluid other than the recommended brake fluid as this will reduce brake efficiency. Use of incorrect fluid could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.



WARNING: Only use brake fluid from a sealed container. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials may result in brake system damage or failure. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your physician.



WARNING: A fluid level between the **MAX** and **MIN** lines is within the normal operating range and there is no need to add fluid. A fluid level not in the normal operating range could compromise the performance of the system. Have your vehicle checked immediately.

Maintenance



To avoid fluid contamination, the reservoir cap must remain in place and fully tight, unless you are adding fluid.

Only use fluid that meets Ford specifications. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 190).

CLUTCH FLUID CHECK

The clutch and brake systems share the same fluid reservoir. See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 156).

CHANGING THE 12V BATTERY



WARNING: Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide correct ventilation.



WARNING: When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the end walls could cause acid to flow through the vent caps, resulting in personal injury and damage to the vehicle or battery. Lift the battery with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.



WARNING: Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.



WARNING: Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Wash hands after handling.



WARNING: For vehicles with Auto-Start-Stop the battery requirement is different. You must replace the battery with one of exactly the same specification.

The battery is in the engine compartment. See **Under Hood Overview** (page 150).

Your vehicle has a maintenance-free battery. It does not require additional water during service.

If the vehicle battery has a cover, make sure you correctly install it after cleaning or replacing the battery.

Maintenance

For longer, trouble-free operation, keep the top of the battery clean and dry and the battery cables tightly fastened to the battery terminals. If any corrosion is present on the battery or terminals, remove the cables from the terminals and clean with a wire brush. You can neutralize the acid with a solution of baking soda and water.

We recommend that you disconnect the negative battery cable terminal from the battery if you plan to store your vehicle for an extended period.

Note: *If you only disconnect the negative battery cable terminal, make sure it is isolated or placed away from the battery terminal to avoid unintended connection or arcing.*

To maintain correct operation of the battery management system, if you add any electrical devices to your vehicle, do not connect the ground connection directly to the negative battery terminal. A connection at the negative battery terminal can cause inaccurate measurements of the battery condition and potential incorrect system operation.

Note: *If you add electrical accessories or components to your vehicle this may adversely affect battery performance, durability and the performance of other electrical systems on your vehicle.*

If you replace the battery make sure it matches the electrical requirements of your vehicle.

If you disconnect or replace the battery and your vehicle has an automatic transmission, it must relearn its adaptive strategy. Because of this, the transmission may shift firmly when first driven. This is normal operation while the transmission fully updates its operation to optimum shift feel.

Remove and Reinstall the Battery

To disconnect or remove the battery, do the following:

1. Apply the parking brake and switch the ignition off.
2. Switch all electrical equipment off, for example lights and radio.
3. Wait a minimum of two minutes before disconnecting the battery.

Note: *The engine management system has a power hold function and remains powered for a period of time after you switch the ignition off. This is to allow diagnostic and adaptive tables to be stored. Disconnecting the battery without waiting can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

4. Disconnect the negative battery cable terminal.
5. Disconnect the positive battery cable terminal.
6. Remove the battery securing clamp.
7. Remove the battery.
8. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Note: *Before reconnecting the battery, make sure the ignition remains switched off.*

Note: *Make sure the battery cable terminals are fully tightened.*

If you disconnect or replace the vehicle battery, you must reset the following features:

- Window bounce-back. See **Power Windows** (page 56).
- Clock Settings.
- Pre-set radio stations.

Maintenance

Battery Disposal



Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

WASHER FLUID CHECK

When adding fluid, use a mixture of washer fluid and water to help prevent freezing in cold weather and improve the cleaning capability. For information on fluid dilution, refer to the product instructions. We recommend that you only use high quality washer fluid.

Note: The reservoir supplies the front and rear washer systems.

CHECKING THE WIPER BLADES



Run the tip of your fingers over the edge of the blade to check for roughness.

Clean the wiper blades with washer fluid or water applied with a soft sponge or cloth.

CHANGING THE FRONT WIPER BLADES

1. Switch the ignition off.



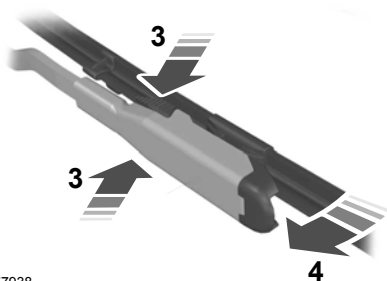
E204171

2. Manually move the wiper arms to the service position. The windshield wipers return to the starting position when you switch the ignition on.

Note: Do not hold the wiper blade when moving the wiper arm to the service position.

Note: You cannot manually move the wiper arms to the service position when you switch the ignition on.

Note: You can use the service position to provide easier access to the wiper blades for freeing them from snow and ice.



E257938

3. Lift the wiper arm and then press the wiper blade locking buttons together.

Note: Do not hold the wiper blade when lifting the wiper arm.

4. Slightly rotate the wiper blade.
5. Remove the wiper blade.

Note: Make sure that the wiper arm does not spring back against the glass when the wiper blade is not attached.

Maintenance

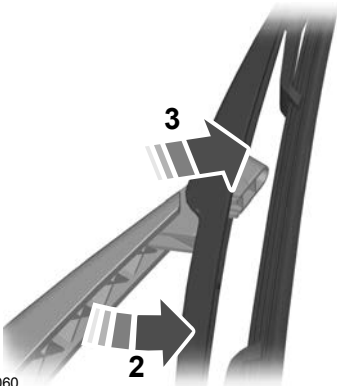
6. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Note: Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.

CHANGING THE REAR WIPER BLADES - VEHICLES WITH: MANUAL LIFTGATE

1. Lift the wiper arm.

Note: Do not hold the wiper blade when lifting the wiper arm.



E130060

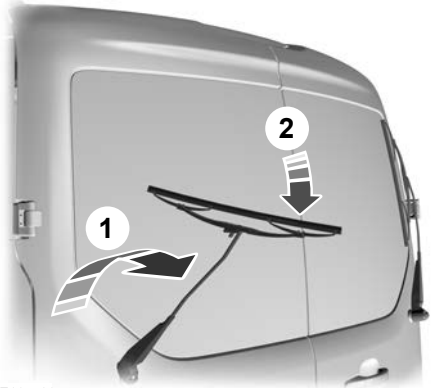
2. Slightly rotate the wiper blade.
3. Remove the wiper blade.

Note: Make sure that the wiper arm does not spring back against the glass when the wiper blade is not attached.

4. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Note: Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.

CHANGING THE REAR WIPER BLADES - VEHICLES WITH: REAR CARGO DOORS

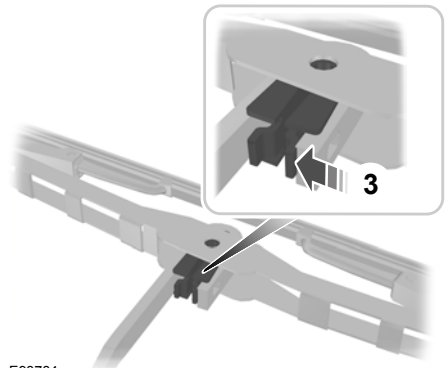


E165586

1. Lift the wiper arm.

Note: Do not hold the wiper blade when lifting the wiper arm.

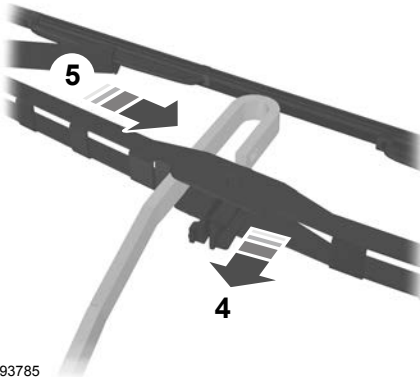
2. Slightly rotate the wiper blade.



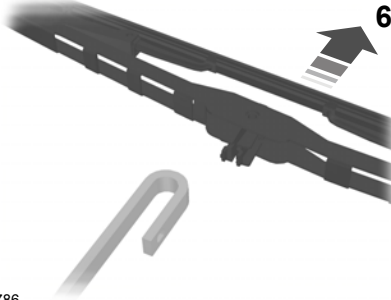
E93784

3. Press the wiper blade locking clip.

Maintenance



4. Disengage the wiper blade from the wiper arm.
5. Move the wiper blade to the side.



6. Remove the wiper blade.
- Note:** Make sure that the wiper arm does not spring back against the glass when the wiper blade is not attached.
7. To install, reverse the removal procedure.
- Note:** Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.

CHANGING A BULB



WARNING: Switch the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

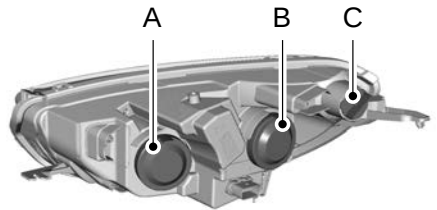


WARNING: Lamps and associated components become hot when in use. Let them cool down before you remove them.

Only fit bulbs of the correct specification.

Note: LED lamps are not serviceable. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Headlamp

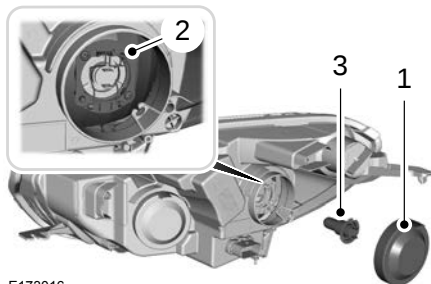


E173014

- | | |
|---|--|
| A | Headlamp high beam and daytime running lamp. |
| B | Headlamp low beam. |
| C | Front direction indicator. |

Maintenance

Headlamp Low Beam

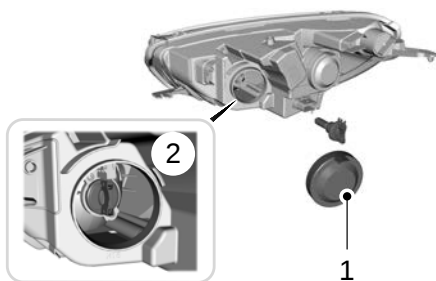


E173016

1. Carefully remove the cover.
2. Release the clip.
3. Remove the bulb holder by pulling it straight out.
4. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Note: Do not touch the bulb glass.

Headlamp High Beam and Daytime Running Lamp



E173017

1. Carefully remove the cover.
2. Press the bulb in and turn the bulb counterclockwise to remove it.

Note: You cannot separate the bulb from the bulb holder.

3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Note: Do not touch the bulb glass.

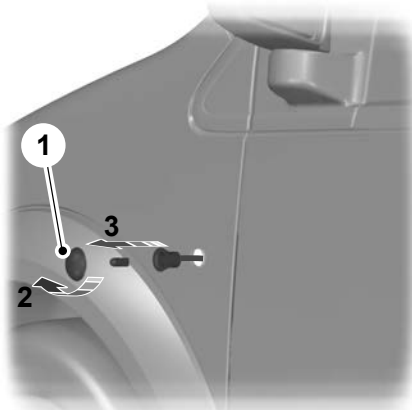
Front Direction Indicator



E173015

1. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
2. Press the bulb in and turn the bulb counterclockwise to remove it.
3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Side Repeater



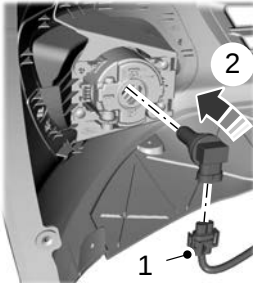
E76063

1. Carefully turn the side repeater counterclockwise and remove it.

Maintenance

2. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
3. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.
4. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Front Fog Lamp



E173018

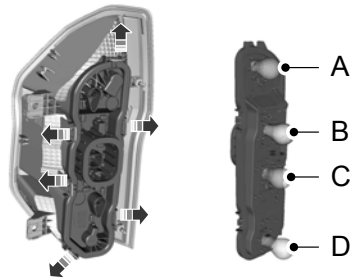
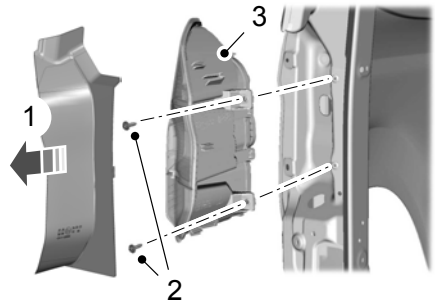
1. Disconnect the electrical connector.
2. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.

Note: You cannot separate the bulb from the bulb holder.

3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Note: Do not touch the bulb glass.

Rear Lamp



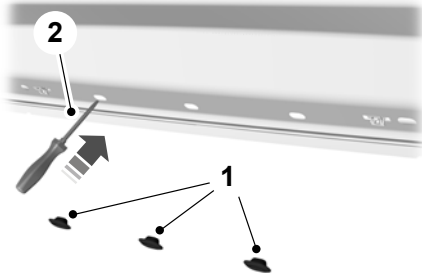
E173019

- A Rear lamp and stoplamp.
- B Rear direction indicator.
- C Reversing lamp.
- D Rear fog lamp.

1. Remove the screws.
2. Remove the lamp and unclip the bulb holder.
3. Press the bulb in and turn the bulb holder counterclockwise to remove it.
4. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Maintenance

Central High Mounted Stoplamp

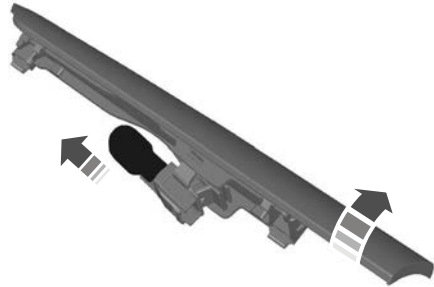


E162641

1. Remove the rubber grommets.

Note: You may need to remove a trim panel first.

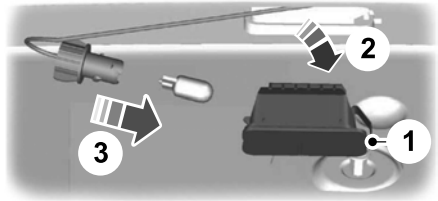
2. Using a screwdriver, gently pry the clip to release the lamp.



E146638

3. Remove the lamp.
4. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.
5. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

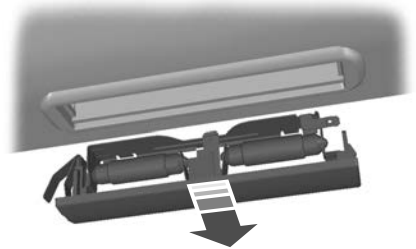
License Plate Lamp



1. Using a screwdriver, gently pry the clip to release the lamp.
2. Remove the lamp.
3. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise to remove it and then pull the bulb straight out.
4. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Interior Lamps

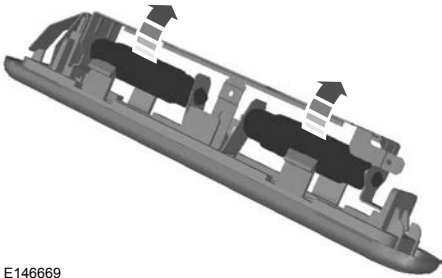
Courtesy Lamp



E154369

1. Use a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver, to carefully remove the lamp.

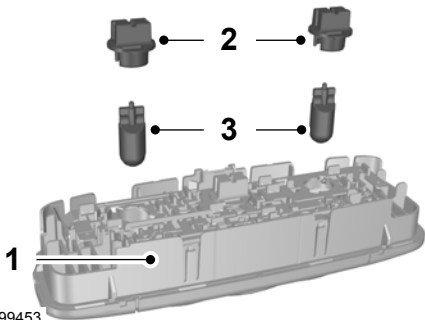
Maintenance



E146669

2. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.
3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Reading Lamps



E99453

1. Use a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver, to carefully remove the lamp.
2. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
3. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.
4. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Vehicle Care

CLEANING THE EXTERIOR

Wash your vehicle regularly with cool or lukewarm water and a neutral pH shampoo.

- Never use strong household detergents or soap, for example dish washing or laundry liquid. These products can discolor and spot painted surfaces.
- Never wash your vehicle when it is hot to the touch, or during strong or direct sunlight.
- Dry your vehicle with a chamois or soft terry cloth towel to eliminate water spotting.
- Immediately remove fuel spillages, bird droppings, insect deposits and road tar. These may cause damage to your vehicle's paintwork or trim over time.
- Remove any exterior accessories, for example antennas, before entering a car wash.
- When filling with AdBlue®, remove any residue on painted surfaces immediately.

Note: *Suntan lotions and insect repellents can damage painted surfaces. If these substances come in contact with your vehicle, wash the affected area as soon as possible.*

Note: *If you use a car wash with a waxing cycle, make sure that you remove the wax from the windshield and the wiper blades.*

Note: *Before using a car wash, check that it is suitable for your vehicle.*

Note: *Some car washes use water at high pressure. Due to this, water droplets may enter inside your vehicle and could also damage certain parts of your vehicle.*

Note: *Remove the antenna before using an automatic car wash.*

Note: *Switch the blower motor off to prevent contamination of the cabin air filter.*

We recommend that you wash your vehicle with a sponge and lukewarm water containing a car shampoo.

Cleaning the Exterior Precautions

Immediately remove fuel spillages, AdBlue residuals, bird droppings, insect deposits and road tar. These may cause damage to your vehicle's paintwork or trim over time.

Remove any exterior accessories, for example antennas, before entering a car wash.

Cleaning the Headlamps

Note: *Do not scrape the headlamps.*

Note: *Do not use abrasives, alcoholic solvents or chemical solvents to clean the headlamps.*

Note: *Do not wipe the headlamps when they are dry.*

Cleaning the Rear Window

Note: *Do not scrape the inside of the rear window*

Note: *Do not use abrasives, alcoholic solvents or chemical solvents to clean the inside of the rear window.*

Clean the inside of the rear window with a soft, lint-free cloth and non-abrasive cleaner.

Cleaning the Chrome Trim (If Equipped)

Note: *Do not use abrasives or chemical solvents. Use soapy water.*

Note: *Do not apply cleaning product to hot surfaces and do not leave cleaning product on chrome surfaces for a period of time exceeding that which is recommended.*

Note: *Industrial-strength (heavy-duty) cleaners, or cleaning chemicals, may cause damage over a period of time.*

Vehicle Care

Cleaning Stripes or Graphics (if

Equipped)

Hand washing your vehicle is preferred however, pressure washing may be used under the following conditions:

- Do not use water pressure higher than 14,000 kPa (2,000 psi).
- Do not use water hotter than 82°C (179°F).
- Use a spray with a 40° wide spray angle pattern.
- Keep the nozzle at a 305 mm (12 in) distance and 90° angle to your vehicle's surface.

Note: Holding the pressure washer nozzle at an angle to the vehicle's surface may damage graphics and cause the edges to peel away from the vehicle's surface.

BodyPaintwork Preservation

Frequently remove particles such as bird droppings, tree sap, insect deposits, tar spots, road salt and industrial fallout to avoid paint surface damage.

Frequently wash the underbody of your vehicle if salt is applied on the road.

We recommend that you wax the paintwork once or twice a year.

Note: Do not apply polish in strong sunlight as this dries the polish too quickly.

Note: Do not allow polish to come in contact with unpainted plastic surfaces as it could be difficult to remove.

Note: Do not apply polish to the windshield or rear window. A contaminated windshield or contaminated wiper blades may lead to increased wiper noise, reduced wipe quality or reduced rain sensor performance.

CLEANING THE INTERIOR

Note: Do not allow air fresheners and hand sanitizers to spill on interior surfaces. If a spill occurs, wipe off immediately. Damage may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Note: Do not use household cleaning products or glass cleaners, which can stain and discolor the fabric and affect the flame retardant abilities of the seat materials.

Note: We recommend distilled water when cleaning.

Fabric, Carpets, Cloth Seats, Headliners and Floor Mats

Note: Avoid soaking any surface. Do not use excessive amounts of water to clean the vehicle interior.

Note: To avoid spots or discoloration, clean the entire surface.

To clean:

- Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner or brush.
- Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
- If a ring forms on the fabric after spot cleaning, clean the entire area immediately, but do not soak or the ring will set.

Seatbelts



WARNING: Do not use cleaning solvents, bleach or dye on the vehicle's seatbelts, as these actions may weaken the belt webbing.

Vehicle Care



WARNING: On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a crash.

Note: Do not use abrasives, or chemical solvents to clean them.

Note: Do not allow moisture to penetrate the seatbelt retractor mechanism.

Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water. Let them dry naturally, away from artificial heat.

Leather Interior (If Equipped)

Note: Follow the same procedure as cleaning leather seats for cleaning leather instrument panels and leather interior trim surfaces.

For routine cleaning, wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

For cleaning and removing stains such as dye transfer, use a leather cleaning product for automotive interiors.

Do not use the following products as these may damage the leather:

- Oil and petroleum or silicone-based leather conditioners.
- Household cleaners.
- Alcohol solutions.
- Solvents or cleaners intended specifically for rubber, vinyl and plastics.

Suede Micro Fiber Fabric (If Equipped)

Note: Do not steam clean.

Note: To avoid spots or discoloration, clean the entire surface.

Do not use the following products:

- Leather care products.
- Household cleaners.
- Alcoholic solutions.
- Spot removers.
- Shoe polish.

To clean:

- Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
- Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
- If a ring forms on the fabric after spot cleaning, clean the entire area immediately, but do not soak or the ring will set.

Instrument Cluster Screens, LCD Screens and Radio Screens

Note: Do not use abrasives, alcoholic solvents or chemical solvents to clean the instrument cluster screens, LCD screens or radio screens. These cleaning products can damage the screens.

Clean the instrument panel and cluster lens with a clean, damp and soft cloth, then use a clean, dry and soft cloth to dry these areas.

Do not spray any liquid directly onto the screens.

Do not use a microfiber cloth to clean the bezel around the display screens as it could damage the surface.

Rear Windows

Note: Do not use any abrasive materials to clean the interior of the rear windows.

Note: Do not install stickers or labels to the interior of the rear windows.

Vehicle Care

Mirrors

Do not clean the housing or glass of any mirror with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum or ammonia-based cleaning products.

Storage Compartments, Cup Holders and Ashtrays

To clean:

- Take out any removable inserts.
- Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

REPAIRING MINOR PAINT DAMAGE

You should repair paintwork damage caused by stones from the road or minor scratches as soon as possible. A choice of products are available from an authorized dealer.

Remove particles such as bird droppings, tree sap, insect deposits, tar spots, road salt and industrial fallout before repairing paint chips.

Always read and follow the manufacturer's instructions before using the products.

CLEANING THE WHEELS

Note: Do not apply a cleaning chemical to warm or hot wheel rims and covers.

Note: Industrial-strength (heavy-duty) cleaners, or cleaning chemicals, in combination with brush agitation to remove brake dust and dirt, could wear away the clear coat finish over a period of time.

Note: Do not use hydrofluoric acid-based or high caustic-based wheel cleaners, steel wool, fuels or strong household detergent.

Note: If you intend parking your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning the wheels with a wheel cleaner, drive your vehicle for a few minutes before doing so. This will reduce the risk of increased corrosion of the brake discs, brake pads and linings.

Note: Some automatic car washes may cause damage to the finish on your wheel rims and covers.

Alloy wheels and wheel covers are coated with a clear coat paint finish. To maintain their condition we recommend that you:

- Clean them weekly with the recommended wheel and tire cleaner.
- Use a sponge to remove heavy deposits of dirt and brake dust accumulation.
- Rinse them thoroughly with a pressurized stream of water when you have completed the cleaning process.

Consult your authorized dealer for approved cleaning products.

Using other non-recommended cleaning products can result in severe and permanent cosmetic damage.

Wheels and Tires

GENERAL INFORMATION

The recommended tire inflation pressures are on the tire information label on the driver side B-pillar.

Check and set the tire pressure at the ambient temperature in which you are intending to drive your vehicle and when the tires are cold. See **Tire Pressures** (page 186).

Note: Check your tire pressures regularly to optimize fuel economy.

Only use approved wheel and tire sizes. Using other sizes could damage your vehicle and could make the National Type Approval invalid.

Installation of any tires that are not the original equipment tire size can cause the speedometer to display incorrect vehicle speed.

TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT



WARNING: Do not use the inflator kit on run flat tires. This could cause loss of vehicle control.



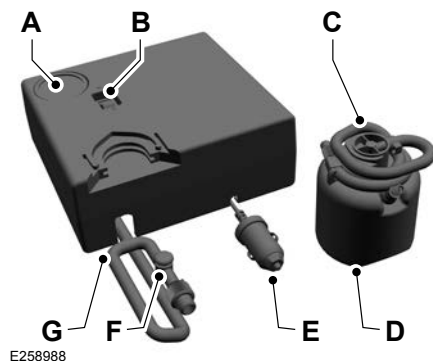
WARNING: Depending on the type and extent of tire damage, some tires can only be partially sealed or not sealed at all. Loss of tire pressure can affect vehicle handling, leading to loss of vehicle control.



WARNING: Do not use the kit on a previously damaged tire, for example when it has been driven under inflated. This could cause loss of vehicle control, personal injury or death.

If your vehicle does not have a spare wheel it has a tire sealant and inflator kit. The kit is in the luggage compartment. Only use the kit supplied with your vehicle.

Note: The kit can only temporarily repair one tire puncture with a maximum puncture size of up to 6 mm (0.24 in).



- A Pressure Gauge.
- B Power switch.
- C Sealant bottle tire inflation pipe.
- D Sealant bottle.
- E 12 volt DC power point connector.
- F Pressure relief valve.
- G Compressor tire inflation pipe.

Note: A maximum speed warning label is attached to the sealant bottle.

Note: Do not use the sealant bottle after its expiry date. You can obtain a replacement sealant bottle from an authorized dealer.



If the low tire pressure warning lamp illuminates do the following:

Wheels and Tires

1. Gradually reduce the vehicle speed and stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
2. Apply the parking brake and switch the ignition off.
3. Check for a punctured tire.

Note: Do not remove objects, for example nails or screws from a punctured tire.

Using the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit



WARNING: Check the sidewall of the tire prior to inflation. If there are any cracks, bumps or similar damage, do not attempt to inflate the tire. This could cause personal injury.



WARNING: Watch the sidewall of the tire when inflating. If any cracks, bumps or similar damage appears, switch the compressor off and let the air out by means of the pressure relief valve. Do not continue driving with this tire. This could cause loss of vehicle control.



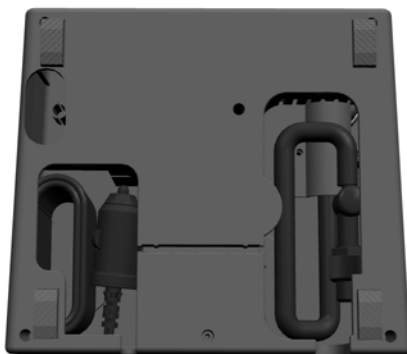
WARNING: Do not stand directly beside the tire while the compressor is operating. This could cause personal injury if the tire bursts.



WARNING: Do not leave the kit unattended when it is in use. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not keep the compressor operating for more than 10 minutes. This could cause the compressor to malfunction causing serious personal injury.



E258994

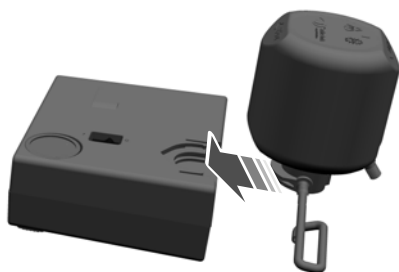
1. Release the tire inflation pipe and the 12 volt DC power point connector from the underside of the compressor.



E259148

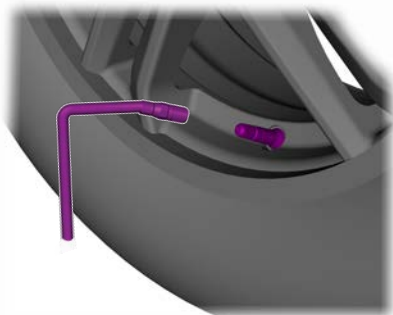
2. Uncoil the sealant bottle tire inflation pipe.

Wheels and Tires



E259014

3. Attach the sealant bottle to the compressor.
4. Attach the compressor tire inflation pipe to the valve on the sealant bottle.



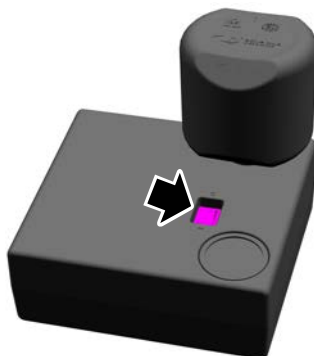
E257006

5. Remove the tire valve dust cap and attach the sealant bottle tire inflation pipe to the tire valve.



E257022

6. Plug the 12 volt DC power point connector into the 12 volt DC socket. See **Auxiliary Power Points** (page 84).
7. Start the engine.



E259160

8. Switch the compressor on.

Wheels and Tires



E257121

9. Inflate the tire to between 2–3 bar (29–44 psi).

Note: If the tire pressure does not reach 1.8 bar (26 psi) within 10 minutes, the tire could be damaged beyond a temporary repair. Have your vehicle immediately checked. Do not drive your vehicle.

10. When the tire reaches the recommended tire pressure of between 2–3 bar (29–44 psi), switch the compressor and the ignition off.
11. Disconnect the sealant bottle tire inflation pipe from the tire valve and the 12 volt DC power point connector.

Note: Do not remove the sealant bottle from the compressor.

12. Reinstall the tire valve dust cap.
13. Place the warning label on the steering wheel and correctly stow the kit in the luggage compartment.



E257942

14. Immediately drive your vehicle for 4–6 km (2–4 mi). Do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph).



E257121

15. After driving between 4–6 km (2–4 mi), stop your vehicle and recheck the tire pressure. See **Tire Pressures** (page 186).

Note: If the tire pressure has dropped to 1.8 bar (26 psi) or below, the tire could be damaged beyond a temporary repair. Have your vehicle immediately checked. Do not drive your vehicle.

Wheels and Tires

After Using the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit



WARNING: If you experience heavy vibrations, unsteady steering behavior or noises while driving, reduce your speed gradually and stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Recheck the tire and its pressure. If the tire pressure is less than 1.3 bar (18.9 psi) or if there are any cracks, bumps or similar damage visible, do not continue driving with this tire. This could cause loss of vehicle control.

The kit only provides temporary mobility. Regulations concerning tire repair or replacement after using the kit could differ from country to country. We recommend you consult a tire specialist.

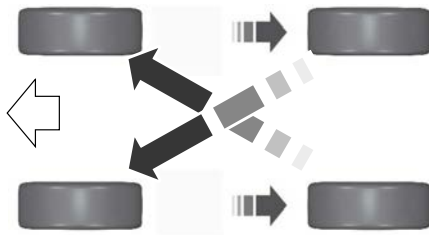
After using the kit:

- Do not drive your vehicle more than 200 km (124 mi) before repairing or replacing the punctured tire.
- Inform all other users of your vehicle that a tire was sealed using the kit. Make them aware of the special driving conditions that must be adhered to.
- Regularly check the tire pressure until the sealed tire is repaired or replaced by a tire specialist. Before the tire is removed from the wheel rim, you must inform the tire specialist that the tire contains sealant.
- Remove the sealant bottle and the sealant bottle tire inflation pipe from the compressor and discard it in your household waste or return it to an authorized dealer.
- Purchase a replacement sealant bottle and sealant bottle tire inflation pipe from an authorized dealer.

TIRE CARE

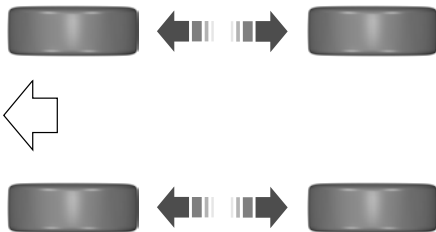
Note: Front tires shown on the left side of the diagram.

Non-directional tires



E142547

Directional tires



E70415

To make sure the front and rear tires of your vehicle wear evenly and last longer, we recommend that you swap the tires from front to rear and vice versa at regular intervals between 5,000 km (3,000 mi) and 10,000 km (6,000 mi).



WARNING: Do not scrub the sidewalls of the tires when you are parking.

If you have to mount a curb, do so slowly and approach it with the wheels at right-angles to the curb.

Wheels and Tires

Examine the tires regularly for cuts, foreign objects and uneven wear of the tread. Uneven wear could mean that the wheel alignment is outside specification.

Check the tire pressures (including the spare) when cold, every two weeks.

USING SUMMER TIRES

The original equipment tires on your vehicle are designed to optimize its performance in dry or wet summer road conditions. They are not designed for winter use.

USING WINTER TIRES



We recommend that you use winter or all-season tires carrying this symbol when the temperature is 7°C (45°F) or lower, or in snow and ice conditions.

Inflate the winter tires to the same tire pressures as those listed in the tire pressures table. See **Tire Pressures** (page 186).



WARNING: Snow tires must be the same size, load index and speed rating as those originally provided by Ford. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended by Ford can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could

result in an increased risk of loss of control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. Additionally, the use of non-recommended tires and wheels can cause steering, suspension, axle, transfer case or power transfer unit failure. Follow the Ford recommended tire inflation pressure found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (on the door hinge pillar, door latch post or the door edge that meets the door latch post, next to the driver seat), or Tire Label on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver door. Failure to follow the tire pressure recommendations can cause uneven treadwear patterns and adversely affect the way your vehicle handles.

USING SNOW CHAINS



WARNING: Do not exceed 50 km/h (30 mph). Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not use snow chains on snow-free roads.



WARNING: Only fit snow chains to specified tires.



WARNING: If your vehicle is fitted with wheel trims, remove them before fitting snow chains.

If you use snow chains or cables, we recommended that steel wheels of the same size and specifications are used. Snow chains or cables could damage alloy wheels.

Only use snow chains on 185/60R15 tires.

Wheels and Tires

Note: *If your vehicle does not have this tire size, you can purchase alternative wheels that permit the use of snow chains or cables.*

If you use snow chains or cables, do the following:

- Avoid fully loading your vehicle.
- Only use recommended tire pressures listed on the tire information label. See **Tire Pressures** (page 186).
- Only use SAE Class S snow chains or cables of 12 mm (0.5 in) or smaller in dimension when measured on the sidewall of the tire.
- Only use snow chains or cables on the front wheels. Make sure they are securely fitted.
- Only use manually adjustable snow chains or cables. Do not use self tensioning snow chains or cables.
- Only use snow chains or cables in pairs. Make sure they do not touch any wiring, brake lines or fuel lines.
- Only use snow chains or cables from a manufacturer that clearly labels the body to tire dimension restrictions.

Alternative Wheels for Snow Chain or Cable Use

Alternative wheels that permit the use of snow chains or cables are available to purchase from an authorized dealer as part of a special snow chain use wheel kit.

If your vehicle has any of the following tire sizes, you must fit 15x5.5J wheel rims and 185/60R15 tires to the front axle for snow chain or cable use:

- 195/60R15.
- 195/55R16.

Vehicles with Stability Control

We recommend that you switch the stability control system off. See **Stability Control** (page 114).

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)



WARNING: The tire pressure monitoring system is not a substitute for manually checking tire pressures. You should periodically check tire pressures using a pressure gauge. Failure to correctly maintain tire pressures could increase the risk of tire failure, loss of control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.



You must check the tire pressures (including the spare tire where applicable) every two weeks when the tires are cold.

You must inflate the tires to the correct pressure. See **Tire Pressures** (page 186).

The tire pressures are also on the tire inflation pressure label (located on the edge of driver door or the B-Pillar).

As a driver assistance feature, your vehicle has a tire pressure monitoring system. A warning lamp will illuminate when one or more of the tires are significantly under-inflated. If the low tire pressure warning lamp illuminates, you should stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so, check the tires and inflate them to the correct pressure.

Driving on under-inflated tires can:

- Cause them to overheat.
- Lead to tire failure.
- Reduce fuel efficiency.
- Reduce tire life.
- Affect vehicle handling or stopping ability.

The system is not a substitute for correct tire maintenance.

Wheels and Tires

You must maintain the correct tire pressures, even if low tire pressure has not illuminated the warning lamp.

The tire pressure monitoring system has a system malfunction indicator to warn you when the system is not operating correctly. The malfunction indicator and low tire pressure warning lamp have a combined function. When the system detects a malfunction, the warning lamp will flash for approximately one minute and then remain illuminated. This sequence will occur every time you switch the ignition on while the malfunction remains. The system has detected a fault that requires service.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressures. A malfunction may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of a replacement tire or wheel that prevents the system from functioning correctly. Always check the tire pressure monitoring system malfunction warning after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle. Make sure the replacement tires or wheels allow the system to continue to function correctly. See **When the Temporary Spare Tire is Installed** in this section.

How Temperature Affects the Tire Pressures

Under normal driving conditions tire pressures may increase by up to 0.3 bar (4 psi) from a cold start situation.

If the vehicle is stationary overnight and the temperature significantly lower than the daytime temperature, tire pressures may decrease by up to 0.2 bar (3 psi) when there is a drop in the ambient temperature of 31°F (17°C) or more. The system detects this pressure decrease as being significantly below the correct inflation pressure and the warning lamp illuminates.

When Inflating Tires

When inflating the tires the system may not respond immediately to the air added to the tires.

Only inflate tires when they are cold.

If the warning lamp is on:

- Check each tire to verify that none are flat.
- If one or more tires are flat, repair as necessary.
- Check the tire pressures and inflate all tires to the correct pressure. See **Tire Pressures** (page 186).
- Carry out the tire pressure monitoring system reset procedure.

When Changing Tires



You should always have tires serviced by an authorized dealer.

Note: Each road wheel and tire is fitted with a tire pressure sensor located inside the wheel and tire assembly cavity. The pressure sensor attaches to the valve stem. The tire covers the pressure sensor and it is not visible unless the tire is removed. Take care when changing the tire to avoid damaging the sensor.

Wheels and Tires

When Changing Wheels

When changing the wheels of your vehicle, the tire pressure monitoring system needs to re-learn the tire pressure sensors. To achieve this perform the following:

1. Make sure all tires are inflated to the proper pressure. If not, inflate the tires to the correct pressure. See **Tire Pressures** (page 186).
2. Park your vehicle for at least 20 minutes.
3. Carry out the tire pressure monitoring system reset procedure. See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System Reset Procedure** later in this section.
4. The tire pressure monitoring system will automatically re-learn the tire pressure sensors the next time you drive your vehicle for approximately 15 minutes above 40km/h (25 mph).

Understanding the Tire Pressure Monitoring System

The system measures the pressure in the four road tires and sends the tire pressure readings to your vehicle.

The system detects this lower pressure as being significantly below the correct inflation pressure and the warning lamp illuminates. You must inflate the tires to the correct pressure.

When the Temporary Spare Tire is Installed

If you need to replace a road wheel and tire with the temporary spare wheel, the system will continue to identify a defect. This is to remind you to repair the damaged road wheel and tire and refit the repaired road wheel and tire assembly to your vehicle. To restore the correct operation of the system, you must have the repaired road wheel and tire assembly refitted to your vehicle. For additional information, see **Changing Tires with a Tire Pressure Monitoring System** in this section.

When You Believe the System is Not Operating Correctly

The main function of the system is to warn you when the tire pressures are low. It can also warn you in the event the system is no longer capable of operating correctly. See the following chart for information concerning the system:

Wheels and Tires

Warning lamp	Description	Action
Solid warning lamp	Tire(s) under-inflated	1. Make sure tires are at the correct pressure. See Wheels and Tires (page 170). The tire pressures are also on the tire inflation pressure label (located on the edge of driver door or the B-Pillar). 2. After inflating the tires to the correct pressure you must carry out the tire pressure monitoring system reset procedure. See Tire Pressure Monitoring System Reset Procedure in this chapter.
	Spare tire in use	Repair the damaged road wheel and tire and refit the repaired road wheel and tire assembly to your vehicle to restore the correct operation of the system.
	Tire pressure monitoring system malfunction	If the tires are correctly inflated and the spare tire is not in use but the light remains on, the system has detected a fault that requires service.
Flashing warning lamp	Spare tire in use	Repair the damaged road wheel and tire and refit the repaired road wheel and tire assembly to your vehicle to restore the correct operation of the system.
	Tire pressure monitoring system malfunction	If the tires are correctly inflated and the spare tire is not in use but the light remains on, the system has detected a fault that requires service.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System Reset Procedure

Overview

You must carry out the system reset procedure after each tire replacement or adjustment of the tire pressures.

To maintain your vehicle load carrying capability, your vehicle requires different tire pressures in the front tires compared to the rear tires.

The system illuminates the warning lamp at different pressures for the front and rear tires.

Wheels and Tires

The tires need to be periodically rotated to provide consistent performance and maximum tire life, the system needs to know when the tires have been rotated to determine which set of tires are on the front and rear axles. With this information, the system can detect and correctly warn

of low tire pressures.

Carrying Out the System Reset Procedure

Switch the ignition on. Using the information display control select:

Message	Description and Action
Vehicle settings	
Tyre pressure sys	Press and hold the OK button until confirmation appears. Alternatively, if your vehicle has a tire pressure monitoring system reset button, press and hold the button until confirmation appears.

CHANGING A ROAD WHEEL



WARNING: Do not fit more than one spare wheel on your vehicle at any one time.



WARNING: Do not carry out any tire repairs on a spare wheel.



WARNING: Do not switch off stability control or select sport mode, when using a temporary spare wheel or after inflating a tire using the temporary mobility kit.

If a tire deflates when your vehicle is moving, do the following:

- Firmly hold the steering wheel.
- Avoid heavy braking.
- Gradually reduce the vehicle speed and stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
- Fully apply the parking brake.
- Switch the ignition off.

If the spare wheel is exactly the same type and size as the other fitted road wheels, you can replace the existing road wheel with the spare wheel and continue to drive in the normal manner. We recommend that you have the damaged road wheel and tire repaired or replaced as soon as possible.

Dissimilar Spare Wheel and Tire Assembly Information



WARNING: Failure to follow these guidelines could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, injury or death.



WARNING: If you are not sure what type of spare wheel your vehicle has, do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph).

If the spare wheel is different to the other fitted road wheels, it may have a warning label with the appropriate maximum speed limit. Drive cautiously when using a dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly.

Wheels and Tires

A dissimilar spare wheel and tire is for temporary use only. Drive the shortest distance possible and have the damaged road wheel and tire repaired or replaced as soon as possible. If the dissimilar spare wheel or tire is damaged, it must be replaced.

If you use a dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly do not:

- Load your vehicle beyond maximum vehicle load rating listed on the safety compliance label.
- Tow a trailer.
- Use snow chains on the end of your vehicle with the dissimilar spare tire.
- Use more than one dissimilar spare tire at a time.
- Use commercial car washing equipment.

If you use a dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly, this can lead to impairment of the following:

- Handling, stability and braking performance.
- Comfort and noise.
- Ground clearance and parking at curbs.
- Winter weather driving capability.
- Wet weather driving capability.

Vehicle Jack



WARNING: Check that the vehicle jack is not damaged or deformed and the thread is lubricated and clean.



WARNING: Never place anything between the vehicle jack and the ground.



WARNING: Never place anything between the vehicle jack and your vehicle.



WARNING: The jack supplied with this vehicle is only intended for changing wheels. Do not use the vehicle jack other than when you are changing a wheel in an emergency.



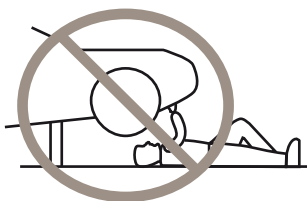
WARNING: Do not work on your vehicle when the jack is the only support. If the vehicle slips off the jack, you or someone else could be seriously injured.



WARNING: No person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.



WARNING: Do not get under a vehicle that is only supported by a vehicle jack.



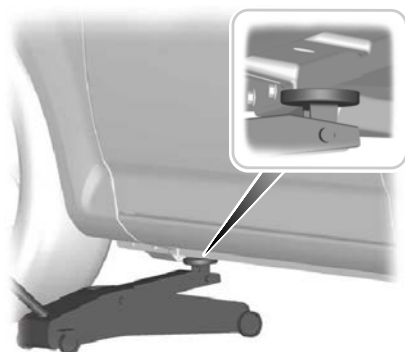
Workshop Type Hydraulic Trolley Jack



WARNING: Use a jack with a minimum lifting capacity of 1,500 kg (3,307 lb) and a lifting plate with a minimum diameter of 80 mm (3.1 in).

We recommend you use a workshop type hydraulic trolley jack for changing between summer and winter tires.

Wheels and Tires



E93020

Vehicle Jack Location

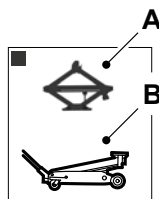
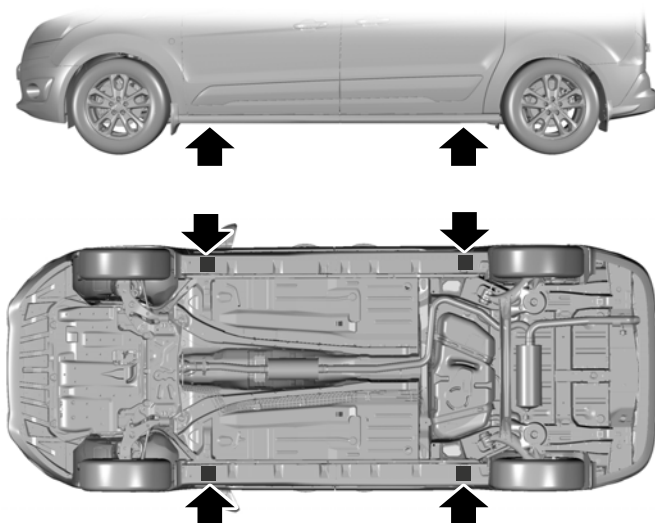
The vehicle jack and lug nut tool are in the right-hand side storage compartment in the cargo area.

Note: Vehicles with a temporary mobility kit do not have a vehicle jack or lug nut tool. See **Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit** (page 170).

Vehicle Jacking Points



WARNING: Use only the specified jacking points. If you use other positions, you may damage the body, steering, suspension, engine, braking system or the fuel lines.

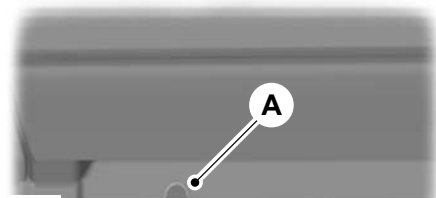


E164258

Wheels and Tires

- A Emergency use only.
- B Maintenance.

1. Locate the vehicle jacking points.



E93184

2. Indentations in the sills show the location of the jacking points.

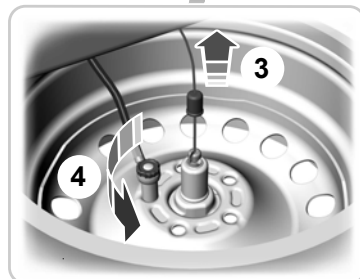
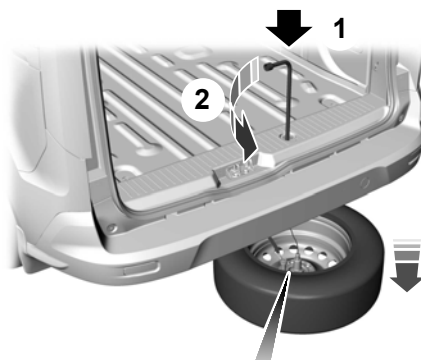


E92932

3. Place the hexagonal end of the lug nut tool onto the vehicle jack.
4. Turn the lug nut tool clockwise to raise your vehicle.

Removing the Spare Wheel

The spare wheel is under the rear of your vehicle and removed using a winch system.



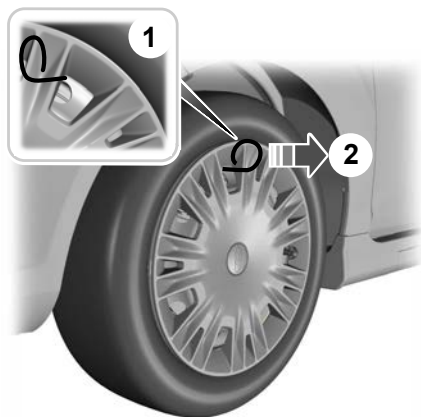
E166659

1. Insert the hexagonal end of the lug nut tool into the guide hole.
2. Turn the lug nut tool counterclockwise until the spare wheel rests on the ground and there is slack in the cable.
3. Unscrew the cap and slide it back, turn the primary cable through 90 degrees and remove it.
4. Unscrew the nut to remove the secondary cable and the bracket.

Do not raise the spare wheel carrier without a wheel attached. This can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Wheels and Tires

Removing the Wheel Trim (If Equipped)



E122314

1. Insert the wheel trim remover.

Note: The wheel trim remover is in the glove box.

2. Pull the wheel trim remover at right angles to the wheel trim.
3. Remove the wheel trim.

Removing a Road Wheel



WARNING: Park your vehicle in such a position that neither the traffic nor you are hindered or endangered.



WARNING: Park your vehicle so that you do not obstruct the flow of traffic or place yourself in any danger and set up a warning triangle.



WARNING: Make sure that your vehicle is on firm and level ground with the front wheels pointing straight ahead.



WARNING: Switch the ignition off and apply the parking brake.



WARNING: If your vehicle has a manual transmission, shift into first or reverse gear. If your vehicle has an automatic transmission, shift into park (P).



WARNING: Make sure all passengers are out of your vehicle.



WARNING: Make sure that the vehicle jack is vertical to the jacking point and the base is flat on the ground.

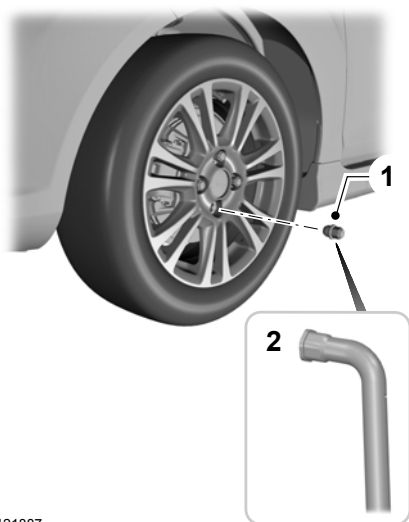


WARNING: Secure the diagonally opposite wheel with an appropriate block or wheel chock.



WARNING: When one of the front wheels is off the ground, the transmission alone will not prevent the vehicle from moving or slipping off the jack, even if the transmission is in park (P).

Wheels and Tires



E121887

1. Install the locking lug nut key.
2. Loosen the lug nuts.
3. Raise your vehicle until the tire is clear of the ground.
4. Remove the lug nuts and the wheel.

Note: Do not lay alloy wheels face down on the ground. This may damage the paint.

Installing a Road Wheel



WARNING: When you install a wheel, always remove any corrosion, dirt or foreign materials present on the mounting surfaces of the wheel or the surface of the wheel hub, brake drum or brake disc that contacts the wheel. Make sure to secure any fasteners that attach the rotor to the hub so they do not interfere with the mounting surfaces of the wheel. Installing wheels without

correct metal-to-metal contact at the wheel mounting surfaces can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel to come off while your vehicle is in motion, resulting in loss of vehicle control, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Make sure there is no grease or oil on the threads or the surface between the wheel lugs and nuts. This can cause the lug nuts to loosen while driving.



WARNING: Use only approved wheel and tire sizes. Using other sizes could damage your vehicle and will make the National Type Approval invalid.



WARNING: Do not fit run flat tires on vehicles that were not originally fitted with them. Contact an authorized dealer for more details about compatibility.



WARNING: Do not install alloy wheels using lug nuts designed for use with steel wheels.



WARNING: Have the lug nuts checked for tightness and the tire pressure checked as soon as possible.



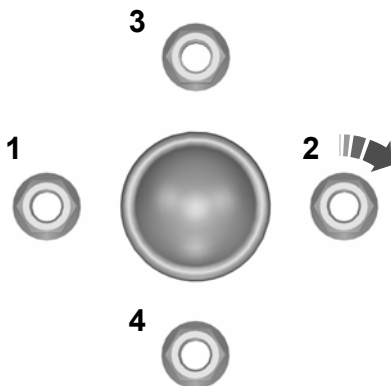
Wheels and Tires

1. Inspect the wheel pilot bore (A) and mounting surface prior to installation. Remove any visible corrosion or loose particles.

2. Install the wheel.

3. Install the lug nuts finger tight.

Note: Make sure that the cones on the lug nuts are against the wheel.



E90589

4. Partially tighten the lug nuts in the sequence shown.
5. Lower your vehicle and remove the vehicle jack.
6. Fully tighten the lug nuts in the sequence shown. See **Lug Nuts** (page 189).
7. Carefully install the wheel trim.

Stowing the Flat Tire

Do not raise the spare wheel carrier without a wheel attached. This can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

1. Attach the bracket and the secondary cable to the road wheel.

2. Attach the primary cable to the bracket. Install the cap, turn it clockwise until you feel a strong resistance.

3. Insert the hexagonal end of the lug nut tool into the guide hole.

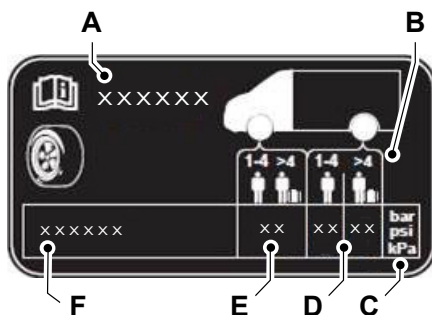
4. Turn the lug nut tool clockwise until you feel a strong resistance and the spare wheel is fully stowed.

TIRE PRESSURES - TOURNEO

The recommended tire inflation pressures are on the tire information label on the driver side B-pillar.

Check all tire pressures when they are cold, at least once every two weeks.

Note: You may need to remove the spare wheel from the spare wheel carrier to check the tire pressure.



E254145

- A Vehicle model.
- B Vehicle load.
- C Measure unit.
- D Rear tire pressure.

Wheels and Tires

E Front tire pressure.

F Tire size.

Tire Size	Normal Load		Full Load	
	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)
185/60R15.	2.3 (33)	2.5 (36)	2.5 (36)	2.8 (41)
195/60R15.	2.2 (32)	2 (29)	2.5 (36)	3.2 (46)
195/55R16.	2.2 (32)	2 (29)	2.5 (36)	2.8 (41)

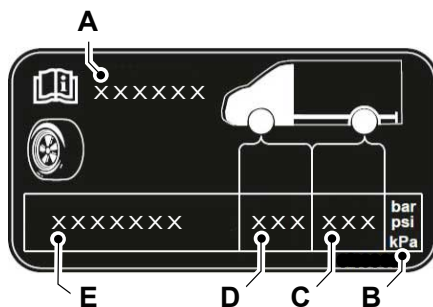
Wheels and Tires

TIRE PRESSURES - TRANSIT

The recommended tire inflation pressures are on the tire information label on the driver side B-pillar.

Check all tire pressures when they are cold, at least once every two weeks.

Note: You may need to remove the spare wheel from the spare wheel carrier to check the tire pressure.



E254055

- A Vehicle model.
- B Measure unit.
- C Rear tire pressure.
- D Front tire pressure.
- E Tire size.

Tire Size	Normal Load		Full Load	
	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)
185/60R15.	2.3 (33)	2.5 (36)	2.5 (36)	2.8 (41)
195/60R15.	2.2 (32)	2 (29)	2.5 (36)	3.2 (46)
195/55R16.	2.2 (32)	2 (29)	2.5 (36)	2.8 (41)

Wheels and Tires

LUG NUTS

Lug Nut Torque

Nm (lb.ft)
133 (98)

Locking Lug Nuts

You can obtain a replacement locking lug nut key and replacement locking lug nuts from an authorized dealer using the reference number certificate.

Capacities and Specifications

VEHICLE DIMENSIONS - TOURNEO

Dimension Description	Dimension
Maximum length.	4,157 mm (163.7 in)
Overall width including exterior mirrors.	2,060–2,112 mm (81.1–83.1 in)
Overall height - EC curb weight.	1,774–1,784 mm (69.8–70.2 in)
Wheelbase.	2,489 mm (98.0 in)
Front track.	1,491–1,496 mm (58.7–58.9 in)
Rear track.	1,479–1,484 mm (58.2–58.4 in)

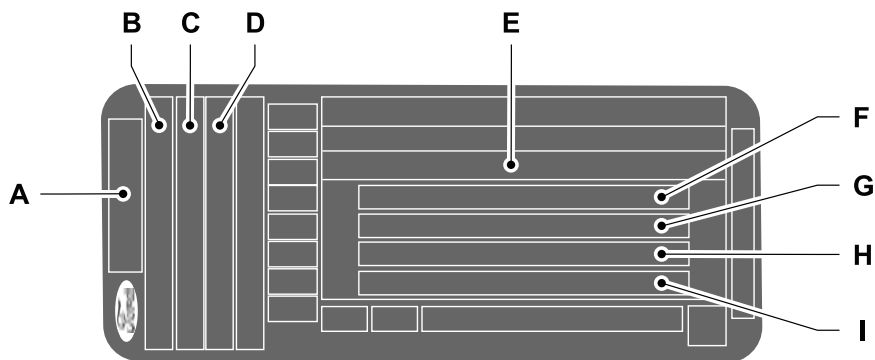
Capacities and Specifications

VEHICLE DIMENSIONS - TRANSIT

Dimension Description	Dimension
Overall length.	4,157 mm (163.7 in)
Overall width including the exterior mirrors.	2,060–2,112 mm (81.1–83.1 in)
Overall height excluding the antenna.	1,764–1,813 mm (69.4–71.4 in)
Wheelbase.	2,489 mm (98.0 in)
Front track.	1,491–1,496 mm (58.7–58.9 in)
Rear track.	1,479–1,484 mm (58.2–58.4 in)

Capacities and Specifications

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION PLATE



- A Model.
- B Variant.
- C Engine designation.
- D Engine power and emission level.
- E Vehicle identification number.
- F Gross vehicle weight.
- G Gross train weight.
- H Maximum front axle weight.
- I Maximum rear axle weight.

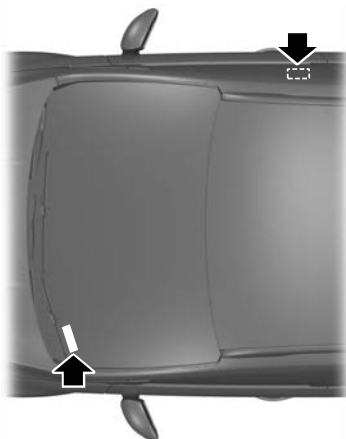
The vehicle identification plate is within the right-hand door aperture.

Note: The vehicle identification plate may vary to that shown.

Note: Information on the vehicle identification plate is dependent upon market requirements.

Capacities and Specifications

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER



E87496

The vehicle identification number is stamped into the floor panel on the right-hand side, beside the front seat. It is also shown on the left-hand side of the instrument panel.

CAPACITIES AND SPECIFICATIONS - 1.0L ECOBOOST™

Use oil and fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade.

If you do not use oil and fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade, it could result in:

- Component damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.
- Longer engine cranking periods.
- Increased emission levels.
- Reduced engine performance.
- Reduced fuel economy.
- Reduced brake performance.

Engine

Engine Oil

Capacities

Variant	Including the Oil Filter	Excluding the Oil Filter
All.	5.05 L (1.1 gal)	4.85 L (1.1 gal)

Note: The quantity of engine oil required to raise the indicated level on the dipstick from minimum to maximum is 1.5 L (0.3 gal).

Materials

Name	Specification
Engine Oil - SAE 5W-20	WSS-M2C948-B

Capacities and Specifications

Engine Oil Top-Up

If you are unable to find engine oil that meets the specification defined by WSS-M2C948-B, you can top-up with a

SAE 5W-20 engine oil that is defined by ACEA A5/B5.

Note: Do not use more than 0.5 L (0.1 gal) of the alternative engine oil between scheduled service intervals.

Engine Coolant

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	6.3 L (1.4 gal)

Materials

Name	Specification
Antifreeze Super Plus Premium FU7J-19544-xx	WSS-M97B44-D
Antifreeze Super Plus Premium Ready Mix 2U2J-19544-xxxx	WSS-M97B44-D2

Fuel Tank

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	45 L (9.9 gal)

Washer Reservoir

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	3.7 L (0.8 gal)

Materials

Name	Specification
Screen Wash FU7J-19C544-AA/BA/DA/EA/GA/HA	WSS-M14P19-A

Capacities and Specifications

Brake System

Materials

Name	Specification
Brake Fluid DOT 4 LV High Performance BU7J-M6C65-xxxx	WSS-M6C65-A2

CAPACITIES AND SPECIFICATIONS - 1.5L DURATORQ-TDCI DIESEL

Use oil and fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade.

If you do not use oil and fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade, it could result in:

- Component damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.
- Longer engine cranking periods.
- Increased emission levels.
- Reduced engine performance.
- Reduced fuel economy.
- Reduced brake performance.

Engine

Engine Oil

Capacities

Variant	Including the Oil Filter	Excluding the Oil Filter
All.	6.2 L (1.4 gal)	6.1 L (1.3 gal)

Note: The quantity of engine oil required to raise the indicated level on the dipstick from minimum to maximum is 1.75 L (0.4 gal).

Materials

Name	Specification
Engine Oil - SAE 0W-30	WSS-M2C950-A

Engine Oil Top-Up

If you are unable to find engine oil that meets the specification defined by WSS-M2C950-A, you can top-up with a SAE 0W-30 engine oil that is defined by ACEA C2.

Note: Do not use more than 1 L (0.2 gal) of the alternative engine oil between scheduled service intervals.

Capacities and Specifications

Engine Coolant

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	6 L (1.3 gal)

Materials

Name	Specification
Antifreeze Super Plus Premium FU7J-19544-xx	WSS-M97B44-D
Antifreeze Super Plus Premium Ready Mix 2U2J-19544-xxxx	WSS-M97B44-D2

Fuel Tank

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	44 L (9.7 gal)

AdBlue® Tank

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	11.9 L (2.6 gal)

Washer Reservoir

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	2.5 L (0.5 gal)

Capacities and Specifications

Materials

Name	Specification
Screen Wash FU7J-19C544-AA/BA/DA/EA/GA/HA	WSS-M14P19-A

Brake System

Materials

Name	Specification
Brake Fluid DOT 4 LV High Performance BU7J-M6C65-xxxx	WSS-M6C65-A2

BULB SPECIFICATION CHART

Exterior Lamps

Lamp	Specification	Power (Watt)
Front side lamp.	W5W	5
Front direction indicator.	PY21W	21
Headlamp low beam.	H7	55
Headlamp high beam and daytime running lamp.	H15	55/15
Front fog lamps.	H11	55
Side direction indicator.	WY5W	5
Rear lamp and stoplamp.	P21/5W	21/5
Central high mounted stoplamp.	W16W	16
Rear direction indicator.	PY21W	21
Rear fog lamp.	P21W	21
Reversing lamp.	P21W	21
License plate lamp.	W5W	5

Capacities and Specifications

Interior Lamps

Lamp	Specification	Power (Watt)
Interior lamp.	W6W	6
Luggage compartment lamp.	211 Festoon	10

Capacities and Specifications

FUEL CONSUMPTION FIGURES - 1.0L ECOBOOST™

NEDC

Urban	Extra-Urban	Combined	CO ₂ Emissions
L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	g/km
7.6–6.1 (37–46)	5.4–4.6 (52–61)	6.2–5.2 (46–54)	117–140

WLTP

Low	Medium	High	Extra-High	Combined	CO ₂ Emissions
L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	g/km
9.1–6.8 (31–42)	6.9–5.5 (41–51)	6.5–5.3 (43–53)	8.3–7 (34–40)	7.6–6.2 (37–46)	139–170

Capacities and Specifications

FUEL CONSUMPTION FIGURES - 1.5L DURATORQ-TDCI DIESEL

NEDC

Urban	Extra-Urban	Combined	CO ₂ Emissions
L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	g/km
5.4–4.5 (52.3–62.8)	4.2–3.8 (67.3–74.3)	4.6–4.2 (61.4–67.3)	109–120

WLTP

Low	Medium	High	Extra-High	Combined	CO ₂ Emissions
L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	g/km
6.3–5.1 (44.8–55.4)	5.1–4.5 (55.4–62.8)	5.1–4.2 (55.4–67.3)	6.9–5.5 (40.9–51.4)	5.8–4.9 (48.7–57.6)	129–151

FUEL CONSUMPTION FIGURES

Energy Consumption (OVC) Fuel Economy (ICE and NOVC) and CO2 Emissions

The declared WLTP fuel/energy consumptions, CO2 emissions and electric range are determined according to the technical requirements and specifications of the European Regulations (EC) 715/2007 and (EU) 2017/1151 as last amended. The applied standard test procedures enable comparison between different vehicle types and different manufacturers.

European Directive 1999/94/EC

In addition to the fuel/energy efficiency of a car, driving behaviour as well as other non-technical factors play a role in determining a car's fuel/energy consumption, CO2 emissions and electric range. CO2 is the main greenhouse gas responsible for global warming. A guide on fuel economy and CO2 emissions which contains data for all new passenger car models is available at any point of sale free of charge.

Audio System

AUDIO UNIT - VEHICLES WITHOUT: SYNC 3

Switching the Audio Unit On and Off



Adjusting the Volume



E269094

Selecting the Radio



Next Track Button



Select to skip to the next track.
Press and hold the button to fast forward through the track.

Previous Track Button



Select to return to the beginning of a track.

Repeatedly press the button to return to previous tracks.

Press and hold the button to fast rewind.

Selecting Media



Press the button to select media mode.

Repeatedly press the button to scroll through the available media sources.

Accessing the Menu



Press the button to access different audio system features.

Selecting a Menu Option



Pausing or Playing Media



Select to play a track. Press the button again to pause the track.

In radio mode, press the button to mute the radio. Press the button again to unmute.

Scrolling Through the Menu Options



Sound Settings



Press the button to adjust the sound settings.

Clock Settings



Press the button to adjust the clock settings.

Audio System

Using a Cell Phone

PHONE Press to access the phone features of the system.

Answering a Call



Ending a Call



Information

i Press the button to view more information on the display.

Switching Traffic Announcements On and Off

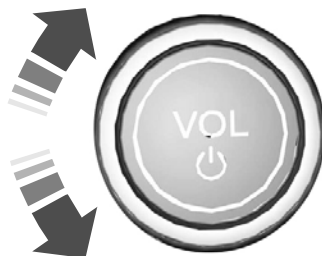
TA Press the button during an announcement to cancel the announcement.

AUDIO UNIT - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 3, VEHICLES WITHOUT: TOUCHSCREEN DISPLAY

Switching the Audio Unit On and Off



Adjusting the Volume



Selecting the Radio



Select to use the radio.

Select again to display the available radio bands.

Repeatedly press the button to scroll through the available radio bands.

Audio System

Changing Radio Stations

Manual Tuning



E248947

Scrolling Through the Menu Options



E248947

Note: You can change radio stations using the seek buttons.

Note: You can recall radio stations using the numeric preset buttons.

Selecting Media



Press the button to select media mode.

Press the button again to display the available media sources. Repeatedly press the button to scroll through the available media sources.



E248946

Next Track Button



Select to skip to the next track.

Press and hold the button to fast forward through the track.

Previous Track Button



Select to return to the beginning of a track.

Audio System

Repeatedly press the button to return to previous tracks.

Press and hold the button to fast rewind.

Pausing or Playing Media



Select to play a track. Press the button again to pause the track.

Switching the Screen On and Off



System Settings



Select to adjust system settings.

Using Apps



Select to search for and use compatible apps on your iOS or Android device.

Sound Settings



Select to adjust the sound settings. You can optimize the sound for different seating positions.

You can also activate and set the sensitivity of the speed compensated volume.

Using a Cell Phone



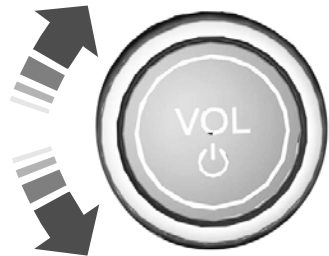
Select to make and end calls and access the phonebook on your cell phone.

AUDIO UNIT - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 3/TOUCHSCREEN DISPLAY

Switching the Audio Unit On and Off



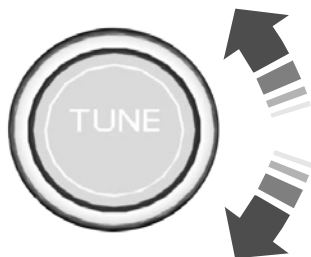
Adjusting the Volume



Audio System

Changing Radio Stations

Manual Tuning



Note: You can change radio stations using the seek buttons.

Note: You can recall radio stations using the preset buttons on the touchscreen.

Next Track Button



Select to skip to the next track.

Press and hold the button to fast forward through the track.

Previous Track Button



Select to return to the beginning of a track.

Repeatedly press the button to return to previous tracks.

Press and hold the button to fast rewind.

Pausing or Playing Media



Select to play a track. Press the button again to pause the track.

Switching the Screen On and Off



Sound Settings



Press the button to adjust the sound settings. You can optimize the sound for different seating positions.

You can also activate and set the sensitivity of the speed compensated volume.

AM/FM RADIO - VEHICLES WITHOUT: SYNC 3

Selecting a Radio Source



1. Press the button to display the available radio bands.
2. Repeatedly press the button to scroll to the required radio band.
3. Press the **OK** button.

Station Presets

To store a radio station, press and hold one of the numeric preset buttons.

Note: Six presets can be stored for each radio band.

Changing Radio Stations



Press to seek the next station up the frequency band.

Press and hold to quickly seek up the frequency band.



Press to seek the next station down the frequency band.

Audio System

Press and hold to quickly seek down the frequency band.

DIGITAL RADIO - VEHICLES WITHOUT: SYNC 3

Selecting a Radio Source

RADIO

1. Press the button to display the available radio bands.
2. Repeatedly press the button to scroll to the required radio band.
3. Press the **OK** button.

Station Presets

To store a station, press and hold one of the numeric preset buttons.

Note: Six presets can be stored for each radio band.

Changing Radio Stations



Press to seek the next station up the frequency band.



Press to seek the next station down the frequency band.

Press and hold to quickly seek down the frequency band.

Selecting a Station from the List

Press the **OK** button to view available ensembles. Select the desired ensemble and station from the list.

AUDIO UNIT CLOCK AND DATE DISPLAYS - VEHICLES WITHOUT: SYNC 3

Adjusting the Clock



Press the button.

Select the clock and follow the instructions on the screen.



CONNECTING A BLUETOOTH® DEVICE - VEHICLES WITHOUT: SYNC 3

Pairing a Device



Press the button.

Select Bluetooth and follow the instructions on the screen.

Note: When pairing a new device, you can choose to download contacts, set this as the primary device and enable Emergency Assistance.

STREAMING BLUETOOTH AUDIO - VEHICLES WITHOUT: SYNC 3

Selecting a Bluetooth Device



Press the button to display the menu.

Audio System

Repeatedly press the button to scroll to the Bluetooth device.

Press the **OK** button.



Press the button to play the track. Press the button again to pause the track.



Press the button to skip to the next track.



Press and hold the button to fast forward through the track.



Press the button once to return to the beginning of the track. Repeatedly press the button to return to previous tracks.

Press and hold the button to fast rewind.

Note: *Not all functions are supported by all phones.*

PLAYING MEDIA FROM A USB DEVICE - VEHICLES WITHOUT: SYNC 3

Track and Folder Format

You can play audio file formats including MP3, WMA, WAV, M4A, M4B, AAC, and FLAC.

Note: *The NTFS file system is not supported.*

Selecting the USB Device



Press the button to display the menu.

Repeatedly press the button to scroll to the USB device.

Press the **OK** button.

Playing from the USB Device



Press the button to play a track. Press the button again to pause the track.



Press the button to skip to the next track.



Press and hold the button to fast forward through the track.



Press the button once to return to the beginning of a track. Repeatedly press the button to return to previous tracks.

Press and hold the button to fast rewind.

Sorting by Categories

You can also sort and play music by specific categories, for example artist or album.

Press the **OK** button to view the available categories.

USB PORT

The USB port is on the audio unit.

You can use the USB port to charge a device only when the engine is running.

USING VOICE RECOGNITION - VEHICLES WITHOUT: SYNC 3

Phone Voice Service

This system allows you to use the voice recognition features of your phone and focus on your driving.



Press the voice control button on the steering wheel.

Note: *This only works when connected via Bluetooth®. See **Connecting a Bluetooth® Device** (page 207).*

Audio System

Note: *When using voice recognition use the language set on the device.*

Note: *We recommend that you check your data plan before using your phone voice service through the system. Using them could result in additional charges.*

SYNC™ 3 - Vehicles Without: Touchscreen Display

GENERAL INFORMATION



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

About SYNC

The system allows you to interact with the entertainment, information and communication systems on your vehicle using voice commands and a screen. The system provides easy interaction with audio, phone, mobile apps and settings.

Note: You can switch the system on and use it for up to an hour without switching the ignition on.

Note: You can use the system after you switch the ignition off for up to 10 minutes or until you open a door.

Note: For your safety, some features are speed-dependent. Their use is limited to when your vehicle speed is less than 5 km/h (3 mph).

Updating the System

Updating the System Using a USB Drive

Downloading an Update

1. Go to the SYNC update page on the local Ford website.
2. Download the update.

Note: The website notifies you if an update is available.

3. Insert a USB drive into your computer.

Note: The USB drive needs to be empty and meet the minimum requirements detailed on the website.

4. Follow the instructions provided to download the update to the USB drive.

Installing an Update

Note: You can use the system when an installation is in progress.

1. Disconnect all other USB devices from the USB ports.
2. Connect the USB drive with the update to a USB port.

Note: Installation starts automatically within 10 minutes.

Updating the System Using a Wi-Fi Network Connection

Connecting to a Wi-Fi Network



Press the button.

1. Select **Autom. system updates**.
2. Select **Wi-Fi connection**.
3. Select **Wi-Fi**.
4. Select **Available networks**.
5. Select an available Wi-Fi network.

Note: Enter the network password to connect to a secure network.

Switching Automatic System Updates On



Press the button.

1. Select **Autom. system updates**.
2. Select **Automatic system updates**.

SYNC™ 3 - Vehicles Without: Touchscreen Display

The system is now set to check for and receive system updates when it is connected to a Wi-Fi network.

Note: You can use the system when a download is in progress.

Note: If the system is disconnected from the Wi-Fi network when a download is in progress, the download continues the next time the system is connected to a Wi-Fi network.

Additional Information and Assistance

For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer or refer to the local Ford website.

USING VOICE RECOGNITION

The system allows you to interact with the entertainment, information and communication systems on your vehicle using voice commands. This allows you to keep your hands on the steering wheel and focus on what is in front of you.

General



Press the voice control button on the steering wheel and wait for the voice prompt.

Note: Press the voice control button again to interrupt a voice prompt and begin speaking.

Note: Turn the volume control when a voice prompt plays to adjust the volume.

Note: Press and hold the voice control button on the steering wheel to use Siri on your iOS device.

The following voice commands are designed to help you from any screen:

- **List of commands**
- **Help**

The following tables list some of the more frequently used voice commands. For a complete list of voice commands, refer to the local Ford website.

Voice Command	Description
___ list of commands	Get a list of voice commands for a specific feature. ¹
Cancel	Cancel an active voice session.
___ help	Get a list of voice commands for a specific feature. ¹
Back	Return to the previous screen.
Main menu	Go to the main menu.
Next page	Go to the next page.
Previous page	Go to the previous page.

¹ Add the name of the feature to the command.

SYNC™ 3 - Vehicles Without: Touchscreen Display

Entertainment

Audio Source

Voice Command	Description
Radio	Use the radio.
CD Player	Use the CD player.
Bluetooth audio	Use a Bluetooth device.
USB	Use a USB or media player.

Radio

Voice Command	Description
AM	Listen to AM radio.
___ AM	Tune to a specific AM frequency. ¹
DAB	Listen to DAB radio.
FM	Listen to FM radio.
___ FM	Tune to a specific FM frequency. ¹

¹ Add the radio frequency to two decimal places to the command.

USB and Media Player

Voice Command	Description
Play album ___	Play your music by category. ¹
Play artist ___	
Play genre ___	
Play playlist ___	
Play song ___	
Browse all albums	Browse music on a USB device.
Browse all artists	
Browse all audiobooks	

SYNC™ 3 - Vehicles Without: Touchscreen Display

Voice Command	Description
Browse all genres	
Browse all playlists	
Browse all podcasts	
Browse all tracks	
Browse album ____	Browse your music by category on a USB device. ¹
Browse artist ____	
Browse audiobook ____	
Browse genre ____	
Browse playlist ____	
Browse podcast ____	

¹ Add an album name, artist name, audiobook name, genre name, playlist name, podcast name or track name to the command. Say the name exactly as it appears on your device.

Phone

Voice Command	Description
Pair phone	Pair a cell phone or Bluetooth enabled device.
Redial	Redial the last number that you dialed.
Dial ____	Dial a number. ¹
Call ____	Call a specific contact from your phonebook. ²
Call ____ ____	Call a specific contact from your phonebook at a specific location. ³
Listen to message	Listen to a text message.

SYNC™ 3 - Vehicles Without: Touchscreen Display

Voice Command	Description
Listen to message ____	Listen to a specific text message from a list of text messages.
Reply to message	Reply to the last text message.

¹ Add the number you want to dial to the command.

² Add a contact name from your phonebook to the command. Say the first and last name of your contact exactly as it appears on your device.

³ Add a contact name and location from your phonebook to the command. Say the first and last name of your contact exactly as it appears on your device.

Apps

General

Voice Command	Description
Mobile apps	Start an app. The system prompts you for the app name.
List apps	Get a list of apps running on your device.
Find apps	Search and connect to apps running on your device.

Active App

Voice Command	Description
____ help	Get a list of voice commands for a specific app. ¹
Close ____	Close an app. ¹

¹ Add an app name to the command.

Voice Settings

Voice Command	Description
Voice settings	Go to the voice settings menu.
Interaction mode standard	Switch long voice prompts on.
Interaction mode advanced	Switch short voice prompts on.

SYNC™ 3 - Vehicles Without: Touchscreen Display

Voice Command	Description
Call confirmation on	Switch call confirmation on. The system prompts you to confirm before making a call.
Call confirmation off	Switch call confirmation off. The system does not prompt you to confirm before making a call.
Voice command lists on	Switch the display of voice commands on.
Voice command lists off	Switch the display of voice commands off.

Automatic Blower Motor Speed Reduction

If necessary, the system decreases the blower motor speed when you are using voice commands to reduce the amount of background noise in your vehicle. It returns to normal when you are finished.

Switching Automatic Blower Motor Speed Reduction Off

Simultaneously press the **A/C** and recirculated air buttons.

ENTERTAINMENT

Using the Radio

Manually Tuning a Radio Station



Press the button.

1. Select a radio source.
2. Rotate the control to change the frequency.

Selecting a Radio Station From a List



E248946

1. Select **Station list**.
2. Select a radio station from the list.

Switching Traffic Announcements On



Press the button.

1. Select **Traffic announcements (TA)**.

Note: If you switch traffic announcements on, traffic announcements broadcast by radio stations interrupt the current audio source to help you plan your route.

Storing a Radio Station

Press and hold one of the numeric preset buttons.

SYNC™ 3 - Vehicles Without: Touchscreen Display

Note: The radio briefly mutes to indicate the radio station has been stored.

Streaming Music From a Bluetooth Device

Check the compatibility of your device on the local Ford website.

Pair your device. See **Phone** (page 217).



Press the button.



Select Bluetooth.



Press the button to play the track. Press the button again to pause the track.



Press the button to skip to the next track.

Press and hold the button to fast forward through the track.



Press the button to return to the beginning of a track.

Repeatedly press the button to return to previous tracks.

Press and hold the button to fast rewind.

Playing Music From a USB or Media Player

Connect your device to a USB port.



Press the button.



Select USB.



Press the button to play the track. Press the button again to pause the track.



Press the button to skip to the next track.

Press and hold the button to fast forward through the track.



Press the button to return to the beginning of a track.

Repeatedly press the button to return to previous tracks.

Press and hold the button to fast rewind.

Note: The system indexes your music before you can play it.

Supported Devices

The system supports most USB and media players, including iOS and Android devices.

Supported File Formats

The system supports the following file formats:

- MP3, MP4, WMA, WAV, AAC, AIFF, APE, DSD, and FLAC audio file formats.
- MP3, WMA, WAV, M4A, M4B, AAC, and FLAC file extensions.
- FAT, exFAT, and NTFS file systems.

Audio File Metadata

The system organizes files on your USB or media player by metadata tags. Metadata tags contain information about the file. If the metadata tags for the files on your USB or media player contain no information, the system classifies them as unknown. The system can index up to 50000 tracks on a USB device or media player, and up to 10 devices.

SYNC™ 3 - Vehicles Without: Touchscreen Display

PHONE



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Check the compatibility of your device on the local Ford website.

Pairing Your Cell Phone for the First Time

Go to the settings menu on your cell phone and switch Bluetooth on.



Press the button.

1. Select **Add phone**.

Note: A prompt alerts you to search for your vehicle on your cell phone.

2. Select your vehicle on your cell phone.

Note: A number appears on your cell phone and on the screen.

3. Confirm that the number on your cell phone matches the number on the screen.

Note: The screen indicates that you have successfully paired your cell phone.

4. Download the phonebook from your cell phone when you are prompted.

Note: If you pair more than one cell phone, use the phone settings to specify the primary phone. You can change this setting at any time.

Using Your Cell Phone

Recent calls

Display and select an entry from a list of previous calls.

Contacts

Alphabetically sort your contacts.

Dial

Directly dial a number.

Text Messaging

Setting Text Message Notification

iOS

1. Go to the settings menu on your cell phone.
2. Select Bluetooth.
3. Select the information icon to the right of your vehicle.
4. Switch text message notification on.

Android

1. Go to the settings menu on your cell phone.
2. Select Bluetooth.
3. Select the profiles option.
4. Select the phone profile .
5. Switch text message notification on.

SYNC™ 3 - Vehicles Without: Touchscreen Display

Using Text Messaging

Menu Item	Description
Hear it	Hear the text message.
View	View the text message.
Call	Call the sender.
Reply	Reply to the text message with a standard text message.

APPS

Note: For more information about available apps, refer to the local Ford website.

When you start an app through the system for the first time, you could be asked to grant certain permissions. You can review and change the permissions that you have granted at any time when your vehicle is not moving. See **Settings** (page 219).

Note: We recommend that you check your data plan before using your apps through the system. Using them could result in additional charges.

Note: We recommend that you check the app provider's terms and conditions and privacy policy before using their app.

Note: Make sure that you have an active account for apps that you want to use through the system.

Note: Some apps will work with no setup. Others require you to configure some personal settings before you can use them.

Using Apps on an iOS Device



Press the button.

1. Connect your device to a USB port.
2. Start the apps on your device that you want to use through SYNC.

Note: If you close the apps on your device, you will not be able to use them through the system.

3. Select **Find mobile apps**.

Note: The system searches and connects to compatible apps that are running on your device.

4. Select the app that you want to use on the screen.

Using Apps on an Android Device



Press the button.

1. Pair your device. See **Phone** (page 217).
2. Start the apps on your device that you want to use through SYNC.

Note: If you close the apps on your device, you will not be able to use them through the system.

3. Select **Find mobile apps**.

Note: The system searches and connects to compatible apps that are running on your device.

4. Select the app that you want to use on the screen.

SYNC™ 3 - Vehicles Without: Touchscreen Display

SETTINGS



Press the button to adjust system settings.

System Settings

General

Item	Description
Language	Set the language.
Temperature unit	Set the temperature unit.
Measure unit	Set the distance unit.
About SYNC	View information about the system and software.
Software licences	View information about the software license.
Master reset	Reset all settings to factory levels. ¹

¹ This resets all settings and deletes your personal data.

Display

Item	Description
Brightness	Adjust the display brightness. ¹
Mode	Set a light background, a dark background or have the system adjust the background based on how dark it is.
Auto dim	Have the system adjust the display brightness based on how dark it is.

¹ This does not change the brightness that you set through the information display.

Media Player

Item	Description
Podcast speed	Adjust the playback speed of podcasts on some iOS devices.
Audiobook speed	Adjust the playback speed of audiobooks on some iOS devices.
Cover art priority	Displays the cover art from the files on your device. If the files on your device do not contain cover art, the system displays Gracenote cover art.

SYNC™ 3 - Vehicles Without: Touchscreen Display

Item	Description
Gracenote® manage-ment	Switch the provision of metadata from Gracenote off.
Device information	View information about your media player software license.
Update media index	Delete the metadata that the system holds about the files on your device to allow re-indexing.

Clock

Item	Submenu Item
Time	Set the time.
24-hour mode	Display the time in 24-hour format.

The system automatically saves any updates you make to these settings.

Bluetooth

Item	Description
Bluetooth	Switch Bluetooth on and off.
View Bluetooth devices	Manage your devices.
Add a Bluetooth device	Add a device.
Connect	Connect a device.
Disconnect	Disconnect a device.
Device information	View information about your device.
Set as favourite phone	Select a preferred device.
Remove	Delete a device.
Active phone settings	Adjust settings for the phone that is currently paired.
Manage contacts	Manage your phonebook and contacts.
Automatic contact download	Switch automatic phonebook download on.
Sort by:	Set your contacts to display alphabetically by forename or by surname.

SYNC™ 3 - Vehicles Without: Touchscreen Display

Item	Description
Download contacts now	Manually download your phonebook.
Delete contacts from vehicle	Delete your phonebook from the system.
Ringtone	Manage device tones.
Text messaging	Switch text messaging on and off or adjust notification settings.
Mute audio in Hands-free off	Keep audio (for example, the radio) muted when you transfer a call to your cell phone.
Roaming warning	Switch roaming notification on and off.
Low battery notification	Switch low battery notification on and off.

Emergency Assistance

Item	Description
Emergency Assistance	Switch Emergency Assistance on and off.

Radio

Item	Description
RadioText	View information about the current radio broadcast.

Apps

Item	Description
Enable Mobile apps	Enable or disable the use of mobile apps on the system. Disabling mobile apps in the settings menu disables automatic updates and the use of mobile apps on the system.
Update Mobile apps	Provides information on the current state of available app updates.
All apps	Grant or deny permissions to all apps at once.

SYNC™ 3 - Vehicles Without: Touchscreen Display

Wi-Fi

Item	Description
Wi-Fi	Adjust your Wi-Fi preferences.
Available networks	Select from the list of available Wi-Fi networks.
Wi-Fi availability notification.	Select to switch notifications on and off.

Vehicle Settings

Camera

Item	Description
Camera settings	Adjust the rear camera preferences.
Rear camera delay	You can enable or disable this option using the slider. When this option is on, the rear view camera display is shown for a short time after you shift the vehicle into drive.
Active Park Assist	Allows you to switch the park aid feature on and off from the rear view camera screen.

Voice Recognition

Item	Description
Advanced mode	Enable this option to remove additional voice prompts and confirmations.
Call confirmation	Enable this option to have the system confirm a contacts name with you before making a call.
Voice command lists	Enable this option to have the system display a list of available voice commands when the voice button is pressed.

Valet Mode

Valet mode allows you to lock the system. No information is accessible until the system is unlocked with the correct PIN.

When you select valet mode a pop up appears informing you that a four digit code must be entered to enable and disable valet mode. You can use any PIN you chose but you must use the same PIN to disable valet mode. The system asks you to input the code.

SYNC™ 3 - Vehicles Without: Touchscreen Display

Note: *If the system locks, and you need to reset the PIN, contact an authorized dealer.*

To enable valet mode, enter your chosen PIN. The system then asks to confirm your PIN by reentering it. The system then locks.

To unlock the system, enter the same pin number. The system reconnects to your phone and all of your options are available again.

Sound Settings



Press the button to adjust sound settings.

Item	Description
Treble	Adjust treble frequency sounds.
Middle	Adjust mid-range frequency sounds.
Bass	Adjust bass frequency sounds.
Fade	Adjust the sound ratio from front to rear.
Balance	Adjust the sound ratio from side to side.
DSP occupancy	Optimize sound for certain seating positions.
Adaptive volume	Adjust the amount that the volume increases as your vehicle speed increases.

SYNC™ 3 - Vehicles Without: Touchscreen Display

SYNC™ 3 TROUBLESHOOTING

Voice Recognition

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
The system does not understand what I am saying.	– You are using the wrong voice commands. • See Using Voice Recognition (page 211). • For a complete list of voice commands, refer to the local Ford website. – You are speaking too soon. • Wait for the voice prompt before you speak.
The system does not understand the name of a track or artist.	– Device limitation. Bluetooth does not support voice commands. • Connect your device to a USB port. • If you have an iOS device, press and hold the voice control button on the steering wheel to use Siri to play specific tracks. – You are using the wrong voice commands. • See Using Voice Recognition (page 211). • For a complete list of voice commands, refer to the local Ford website. – You are not saying the name exactly as it appears on your device. • Say the name of the track or artist exactly as it appears on your device. Spell out any abbreviations in the name. – The name contains special characters, for example *, - or +. • Rename the files on your device or use the screen to select and play the track.
The system does not understand the name of a contact in the phonebook on my device and calls the wrong contact.	– You are not saying the name exactly as it appears on your device. • Say the first and last name of the contact exactly as it appears on your device. Spell out any abbreviations in the name. – The name contains special characters, for example *, - or +. • Rename the contact on your device or use the screen to select and call the contact.

SYNC™ 3 - Vehicles Without: Touchscreen Display

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
The system does not understand foreign names of contacts in the phonebook on my device.	– You are not saying the name exactly as it appears on your device. • Say the first and last name of the contact exactly as it appears on your device. The system applies phonetic pronunciation rules of the selected language to the names of contacts in the phonebook on your device. Select the name of the contact on the screen and use the Hear it option to get an idea of how the system expects you to pronounce it.
The system voice prompts and the pronunciation of some words does not seem to be very accurate.	– Device limitation. • The system uses text-to-speech technology and uses a synthetically generated voice rather than pre-recorded human voice.

USB and Bluetooth Audio

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
I cannot connect my device.	– Device malfunction. • Disconnect your device. Switch your device off, reset it and try again. – Cable connection issue. • Correctly connect the cable to your device and the vehicle USB port. – Incompatible cable. • Use the cable recommended by the manufacturer of your device.

SYNC™ 3 - Vehicles Without: Touchscreen Display

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
	– Incorrect device settings. • Make sure that your device does not have an auto-install program or active security settings. • Check that your device is not set only to charge. – Device lock screen enabled. • Unlock your device before connecting it.
The system does not recognize my device.	– Device limitation. • Do not leave your device in your vehicle during very hot or very cold weather conditions.
The system does not understand the name of a track or artist.	– Device limitation. Bluetooth does not support voice commands. • Connect your device to a USB port. • If you have an iOS device, press and hold the voice control button on the steering wheel to use Siri to play specific tracks.
I cannot stream audio from my Bluetooth device.	– Incompatible device. • Check the compatibility of your device on the local Ford website. – Device not connected. • Pair your device. See Phone (page 217). – Media player not running. • Start the media player on your device.
The system does not recognize the music on my device.	– Missing or incorrect audio file metadata, for example artist, song title, album or genre. • Repair the files on your device. – Corrupt files. • Repair the files on your device. – Copyright protected files. • Use a device that contains files that are not copyright protected. – Unsupported file format. • Repair or convert the files to a supported format. See Entertainment (page 215).

SYNC™ 3 - Vehicles Without: Touchscreen Display

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
	– Device indexing required. • Re-index your device. See Settings (page 219). – Device lock screen enabled. • Unlock your device before connecting it.
Sometimes I cannot hear a track playing on my device.	– Device malfunction. • Disconnect your device. Switch your device off, reset it and try again.
When I disconnect my iOS device the audio volume is set to maximum.	– Device limitation. • Turn the volume down on your device
The system does not play the tracks on my USB drive in the correct order.	If the system does not play the tracks on your USB device in the correct order, the following information could help: – If you are selecting USB as the audio source when the system is still indexing, SYNC plays tracks sorted alphabetically by file name in the root directory. – If you are selecting USB as the audio source after the system has finished indexing, SYNC plays all tracks sorted alphabetically by the title in the ID3 tag regardless of where they are located. SYNC uses the file name if the title in the ID3 Tag does not exist. – If you are selecting the option to play all tracks from the browsing menu, SYNC plays all tracks sorted alphabetically by the title in the ID3 tag regardless of where they are located. SYNC uses the file name if the title in the ID3 Tag does not exist. – If you are selecting a track when using the explore device option, SYNC plays tracks sorted alphabetically by file name in the folder you have selected. SYNC then plays all tracks in any subfolders in the folder you have selected.

SYNC™ 3 - Vehicles Without: Touchscreen Display

Phone

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
During a call, I can hear excessive background noise.	– Incorrect cell phone settings. • Check and adjust the audio settings on your cell phone. Refer to your cell phone's user manual.
During a call, I can hear the other person but they cannot hear me.	– Cell phone malfunction. • Switch your cell phone off, reset it and try again. – Cell phone microphone muted. • Unmute your cell phone microphone.
During a call, I cannot hear the other person and they cannot hear me.	– System restart required. • Restart the system. Switch the ignition off and open the door. Close the door and lock the vehicle. Wait until the screen is off and any illuminated USB ports are not illuminated. Unlock the vehicle, switch the ignition on and try again.
I cannot download phonebook.	– Incompatible cell phone. • Check the compatibility of your cell phone on the local Ford website. – Incorrect cell phone settings. • Allow the system to retrieve contacts from your cell phone. Refer to your cell phone's user manual. – Incorrect system settings. • Switch automatic phonebook download on. See Settings (page 219). – Cell phone malfunction. • Switch your cell phone off, reset it and try again.
A message displays suggesting that my phonebook has downloaded but it is empty or it has missing contacts.	– Incorrect cell phone settings. • Allow the system to retrieve contacts from your cell phone. Refer to your cell phone's user manual. • Check the location of the missing contacts on your cell phone. If they are stored on the SIM card, move them to the cell phone memory. – Incorrect system settings. • Switch automatic phonebook download on. See Settings (page 219).

SYNC™ 3 - Vehicles Without: Touchscreen Display

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
I cannot connect my cell phone.	– Incompatible cell phone. • Check the compatibility of your cell phone on the local Ford website. – Cell phone malfunction. • Switch your cell phone off, reset it and try again. • Install the latest cell phone firmware. • Delete your device from system and delete SYNC from your device and try again. • Switch automatic phonebook download off. See Settings (page 219).
Text messaging does not work.	– Incompatible cell phone. • Check the compatibility of your cell phone on the local Ford website. – Cell phone malfunction. • Switch your cell phone off, reset it and try again.
I cannot hear text messages.	– Incompatible cell phone. • Check the compatibility of your cell phone on the local Ford website.

SYNC™ 3 - Vehicles Without: Touchscreen Display

Apps

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
The system cannot find any apps.	– Incompatible device. • You will need an Android device with OS 2.3 or higher or an iOS 3GS device with iOS 5.0 or higher. Pair and connect your Android device to find AppLink compatible apps. Connect your iOS device to a USB port to find AppLink compatible apps.
I have a compatible device and it is correctly connected but the system still cannot find any apps.	– AppLink compatible apps not installed on your device. • Download and install the latest version of the app. – AppLink compatible apps not running on your device. • Start the apps to allow the system to find them and make sure you sign in to any apps if required. – Incorrect app settings. • Check and adjust the app settings on your device and allow SYNC to access the app if required.
I have a compatible device, it is correctly connected and my apps are running but the system still cannot find any apps.	– Apps failed to fully close. • Restart the apps and try again. • If you have an Android device with apps that have an exit or quit option, use this and then restart the apps. Alternatively, use the force stop option in the settings menu on your device. • If you have an iOS device with iOS 7.0 or higher, tap the home button on your device twice and then swipe the app upward to close it.
I have an Android device that is correctly connected, I have restarted my apps and they are running but the system still cannot find them.	– An issue on some older versions of the Android operating system could result in apps not being found. • Switch Bluetooth off and on again to force the system to reconnect to your device.

SYNC™ 3 - Vehicles Without: Touchscreen Display

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
I have an iOS device that is correctly connected, I have restarted my apps and they are running but the system still cannot find them.	– Cable connection issue. • Disconnect the cable from your device, wait for a moment and then connect it again to force the system to reconnect to your device.
I have an Android device running a media app which the system has found but I cannot hear the sound or the sound is very quiet.	– Device volume is low. • Turn the volume up on your device.
I have an Android device running a number of compatible apps but the system cannot find all of them.	– Device limitation. Some Android devices have a limited number of Bluetooth ports that apps can use to connect. If you have more apps running on your device than the number of available Bluetooth ports, the system cannot find all of them. • Close some of the apps to allow the system to find those that you want to use.

SYNC™ 3 - Vehicles Without: Touchscreen Display

Wi-Fi Connectivity

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
I cannot connect to a Wi-Fi network.	– Password error. • Enter the correct network password. – Weak network signal. • Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi hotspot or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed. – Multiple access points in range with the same SSID. • Use a unique name for your SSID,. Do not use the default name unless it contains a unique identifier, for example as part of the MAC address.
The Wi-Fi connection disconnects after successful connection.	– Weak network signal. • Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi hotspot or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.
I am close to a Wi-Fi hotspot but the network signal strength is weak.	– Obstructed network signal. • If your vehicle has a heated windshield, position your vehicle so that the windshield is not facing the Wi-Fi hotspot. • If your vehicle has metallic tinting on the windows but not on the windshield, position your vehicle so that the windshield is facing the Wi-Fi hotspot or open the windows that are facing the hotspot. • If your vehicle has metallic tinting on the windows and the windshield, open the windows that are facing the hotspot. • If your vehicle is in a garage and you have the garage door closed, open the garage door.
I cannot see a network in the list of available networks that I expect to see.	– Hidden network. • Make the network visible and try again.

SYNC™ 3 - Vehicles Without: Touchscreen Display

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
I cannot see SYNC when I search for Wi-Fi networks on my cell phone or other device.	– System limitation. • SYNC does not provide a Wi-Fi hotspot at this time.
Software downloads take too long.	– Weak network signal • Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi hotspot or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed. – Wi-Fi hotspot in high demand or has a slow Internet connection. • Use a more reliable Wi-Fi hotspot.
The system seems to connect to a Wi-Fi network and the signal strength is excellent but the software does not update.	– No software update available. – Wi-Fi network requires a subscription or acceptance of terms and conditions. • Test the connection using another device. If the network requires a subscription or acceptance of terms and conditions, contact the network service provider.

Resetting the System

1. Simultaneously press and hold the seek up and the audio unit power buttons until the screen goes black.
2. Wait three minutes to allow the system to complete the reset.
3. Press the audio unit power button to switch the system on.

Note: You can reset the system to restore functionality that has stopped working. The system reset is designed to restore functionality and not delete any data that you have stored.

Additional Information and Assistance

For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer or refer to the local Ford website.

SYNC™ 3 - Vehicles With: Touchscreen Display

GENERAL INFORMATION



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

About SYNC

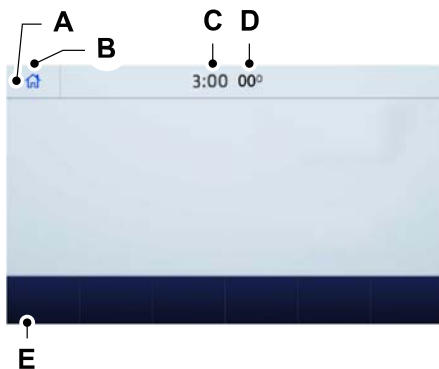
The system allows you to interact with the entertainment, information and communication systems on your vehicle using voice commands and a touchscreen. The system provides easy interaction with audio, phone, navigation, mobile apps and settings.

Note: You can switch the system on and use it for up to an hour without switching the ignition on.

Note: You can use the system after you switch the ignition off for up to 10 minutes or until you open a door.

Note: For your safety, some features are speed-dependent. Their use is limited to when your vehicle speed is less than 5 km/h (3 mph).

Using the Touchscreen



- A Status bar.
- B Home screen.
- C Clock. See **Settings** (page 254).
- D Outside air temperature.
- E Feature bar.

Status Bar



Cell phone microphone muted.



Audio system muted.



Software update installed.



Wi-Fi connected.



Cell phone roaming.



Text message received.

SYNC™ 3 - Vehicles With: Touchscreen Display



Emergency Assistance off.



Cell phone network signal strength.



Vehicle data sharing on.



Vehicle location sharing on.



Vehicle data and vehicle location sharing on.



Traffic data source: Live traffic.



Traffic data source: Traffic broadcast.



Wireless charger active.

Feature Bar



Select to use the radio, a USB, a media player or a **Bluetooth®** device. See **Entertainment** (page 242).



Select to adjust climate settings. See **Climate** (page 244).



Select to make calls and access the phonebook on your cell phone. See **Phone** (page 247).



Select to use the navigation system. See **Navigation** (page 249).



Select to search for and use compatible apps on your iOS or Android device. See **Apps** (page 253).



Select to adjust system settings. See **Settings** (page 254).

Cleaning the Touchscreen

See **Cleaning the Interior** (page 167).

Updating the System

Updating the System Using a USB Drive

Downloading an Update

1. Go to the SYNC update page on the local Ford website.
2. Download the update.

Note: The website notifies you if an update is available.

3. Insert a USB drive into your computer.

Note: The USB drive needs to be empty and meet the minimum requirements detailed on the website.

4. Follow the instructions provided to download the update to the USB drive.

Installing an Update

Note: You can use the system when installation is in progress.

1. Disconnect all other USB devices from the USB ports.
2. Connect the USB drive with the update to a USB port.

Note: Installation starts automatically within 10 minutes.

Updating the System Using a Wi-Fi Network Connection

Switching Automatic System Updates On

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **Automatic updates**.
3. Switch **Automatic system updates** on.

SYNC™ 3 - Vehicles With: Touchscreen Display

The system is now set to check for and receive system updates when it is connected to a Wi-Fi network.

Note: You can use the system when download is in progress.

Note: If the system is disconnected from the Wi-Fi network when download is in progress, the download continues the next time the system is connected to a Wi-Fi network.

Connecting to a Wi-Fi Network

Additional Information and Assistance

For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer or refer to the local Ford website.

USING VOICE RECOGNITION

The system allows you to interact with the entertainment, information and communication systems on your vehicle using voice commands. This allows you to keep your hands on the steering wheel and focus on what is in front of you.

General



Press the voice control button on the steering wheel and wait for the voice prompt.

Note: Press the voice control button again to interrupt a voice prompt and begin speaking.

Note: Turn the volume control when a voice prompt plays to adjust the volume.

Note: Press and hold the voice control button on the steering wheel to use Siri on your iOS device.

The following voice commands are designed to help you from any screen:

- **List of commands**
- **Help**

The following tables list some of the more frequently used voice commands. For a complete list of voice commands, refer to the local Ford website.

Voice Command	Description
___ list of commands	Get a list of voice commands for a specific feature. ¹
Cancel	Cancel an active voice session.
___ help	Get a list of voice commands for a specific feature. ¹
Back	Return to the previous screen.
Main menu	Go to the main menu.

SYNC™ 3 - Vehicles With: Touchscreen Display

Voice Command	Description
Next page	Go to the next page.
Previous page	Go to the previous page.

¹ Add the name of the feature to the command.

Entertainment

Audio Source

Voice Command	Description
Radio	Use the radio.
CD Player	Use the CD player.
Bluetooth audio	Use a Bluetooth® device.
USB	Use a USB or media player.

Radio

Voice Command	Description
AM	Listen to AM radio.
___ AM	Tune to a specific AM frequency. ¹
DAB	Listen to DAB radio.
FM	Listen to FM radio.
___ FM	Tune to a specific FM frequency. ¹

¹ Add the radio frequency to two decimal places to the command.

SYNC™ 3 - Vehicles With: Touchscreen Display

USB and Media Player

Voice Command	Description
Play album ____	Play your music by category. ¹
Play artist ____	
Play audiobook ____	
Play genre ____	
Play playlist ____	
Play podcast ____	
Play song ____	
Browse all albums	Browse music on a USB device.
Browse all artists	
Browse all audiobooks	
Browse all genres	
Browse all playlists	
Browse all podcasts	
Browse all tracks	
Browse album ____	Browse your music by category on a USB device. ¹
Browse artist ____	
Browse audiobook ____	
Browse genre ____	
Browse playlist ____	
Browse podcast ____	

¹ Add an album name, artist name, audiobook name, genre name, playlist name, podcast name or track name to the command. Say the name exactly as it appears on your device.

SYNC™ 3 - Vehicles With: Touchscreen Display

Phone

Voice Command	Description
Pair phone	Pair a cell phone or Bluetooth ®-enabled device.
Redial	Redial the last number that you dialed.
Dial ____	Dial a number. ¹
Call ____	Call a specific contact from your phonebook. ²
Call ____ ____	Call a specific contact from your phonebook at a specific location. ³
Listen to message	Listen to a text message.
Listen to message ____	Listen to a specific text message from a list of text messages.
Reply to message	Reply to the last text message.

¹ Add the number you want to dial to the command.

² Add a contact name from your phonebook to the command. Say the first and last name of your contact exactly as it appears on your device.

³ Add a contact name and location from your phonebook to the command. Say the first and last name of your contact exactly as it appears on your device.

SYNC™ 3 - Vehicles With: Touchscreen Display

Navigation (If Equipped)

Setting a Destination

Voice Command	Description
Find an address	Enter a destination address. When prompted, provide the house number, the street and city.
Find a POI	Search for a point of interest by name or by category.
Find nearest ____	Search for a nearby point of interest by category. ¹
Find a POI category	Search for a point of interest category. ¹
Destination home	Set your saved home address as your destination.
Destination work	Set your saved place of work as your destination.
Previous destinations	Display and select from a list of previous destinations.
Favourite destinations	Display and select from a list of favorite destinations.

¹ Add a point of interest category or the name of a major brand or chain to the command.

Route Guidance

Voice Command	Description
Cancel route	Cancel the current route.
Reroute	Select an alternate route.
Repeat last instruction	Repeat the last guidance prompt.
Show route	Display an overview of the route.
Show map	Display the map on the touchscreen.
Show north up	Display a two-dimensional map with north toward the top of the touchscreen.
Show heading up	Display a two-dimensional map with the direction you are traveling toward the top of the touchscreen.
Show 3D	Display a three-dimensional map with the direction you are traveling toward the front.

SYNC™ 3 - Vehicles With: Touchscreen Display

Apps

General

Voice Command	Description
Mobile apps	Start an app. The system prompts you for the app name.
List apps	Get a list of apps running on your device.
Find apps	Search and connect to apps running on your device.

Active App

Voice Command	Description
___ help	Get a list of voice commands for a specific app. ¹
Close ___	Close an app. ¹

¹ Add an app name to the command.

Voice Settings

Voice Command	Description
Voice settings	Go to the voice settings menu.
Interaction mode standard	Switch long voice prompts on.
Interaction mode advanced	Switch short voice prompts on.
Call confirmation on	Switch call confirmation on. The system prompts you to confirm before making a call.
Call confirmation off	Switch call confirmation off. The system does not prompt you to confirm before making a call.
Voice command lists on	Switch the display of voice commands on.
Voice command lists off	Switch the display of voice commands off.

SYNC™ 3 - Vehicles With: Touchscreen Display

Automatic Blower Motor Speed Reduction

If necessary, the system decreases the blower motor speed when you are using voice commands to reduce the amount of background noise in your vehicle. It returns to normal when you are finished.

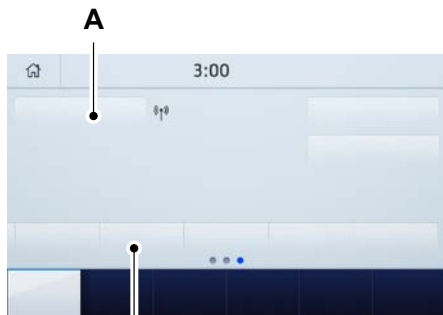
Switching Automatic Blower Motor Speed Reduction Off

Simultaneously press the **A/C** and recirculated air buttons.

ENTERTAINMENT



Select the audio option on the feature bar.



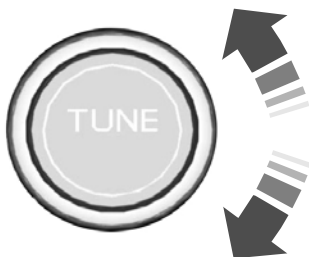
- A** Audio source. Select to choose a different audio source.
- B** Presets. Swipe left to view more presets.

You can access these options using the touchscreen or voice commands.

Using the Radio

Setting an AM/FM Radio Station

1. Select **Sources**.
2. Select **AM** or **FM**.



3. Rotate the control to change the frequency.

Selecting a FM Radio Station From a List

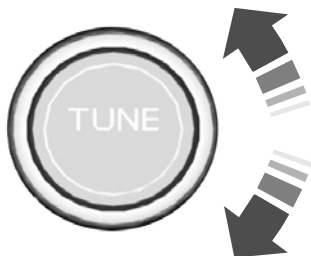
1. Select **Sources**.
2. Select **FM**.
3. Select **Stations**.
4. Select a radio station from the list.

Selecting a Digital Radio Station From a List

1. Select **Sources**.
2. Select **DAB**.
3. Select **Stations**.
4. Select an ensemble.
5. Select a radio station from the list.

SYNC™ 3 - Vehicles With: Touchscreen Display

Manually Changing Digital Radio Stations



Rotate the control to change the station.

Automatically Changing Radio Stations



Press to seek the next station up the frequency band.

Press and hold to quickly seek up the frequency band.



Press to seek the next station down the frequency band.

Press and hold to quickly seek down the frequency band.

Storing a Radio Station

Press and hold one of the preset buttons.

Note: The radio briefly mutes to indicate the station has been stored.

Note: You can add additional preset pages using the settings option on the feature bar.

Switching Traffic Announcements On

Select **Traffic (TA)**.

Note: If you switch traffic announcements on, traffic announcements broadcast by radio stations interrupt the current audio source to help you plan your route.

Streaming Music From a Bluetooth® Device.

Check the compatibility of your device on the local Ford website.

Pair your device. See **Phone** (page 247).

Select **Sources**.



Select Bluetooth.

Searching for Tracks on Bluetooth® Device.

Select **Browse**.

Select a track.

Note: Select the cover art to view information about the current track.

Playing Tracks on Bluetooth® Device in a Random Order.



Select to play tracks in a random order.

Repeating Tracks on Bluetooth® Device.



Select the repeat icon to repeat tracks.

Note: You can repeat one track or all tracks on an audio format **Bluetooth®** Device. You can repeat one track, all tracks or all tracks in one folder on a **Bluetooth®** Device.

Note: A small number one appears next to the repeat icon to indicate that a track is set to repeat. A small folder icon appears next to it to indicate that a folder is set to repeat.

SYNC™ 3 - Vehicles With: Touchscreen Display

Playing Music From a USB or Media Player

Connect your device to a USB port.

Select **Sources**.



Select USB.

Note: The system indexes your music before you can play it.

Searching for Tracks on a USB or Media Player

Select **Browse**.

Select a track.

Note: Select the cover art to view information about the current track.

Note: You can also browse by album, artist, audiobook, genre, playlist, podcast or track name.

Playing Tracks on a USB or Media Player in a Random Order



Select to play tracks in a random order.

Repeating Tracks on a USB or Media Player



Select the repeat icon to repeat tracks.

Note: You can repeat one track or all tracks on an audio format USB or media player. You can repeat one track, all tracks or all tracks in one folder on a USB or media player.

Note: A small number one appears next to the repeat icon to indicate that a track is set to repeat. A small folder icon appears next to it to indicate that a folder is set to repeat.

Supported Devices

The system supports most USB and media players, including iOS and Android devices.

Supported File Formats

The system supports the following file formats:

- MP3, MP4, WMA, WAV, AAC, AIFF, APE, DSD, and FLAC audio file formats.
- MP3, WMA, WAV, M4A, M4B, AAC, and FLAC file extensions.
- FAT, exFAT, and NTFS file systems.

Audio File Metadata

The system organizes files on your USB or media player by metadata tags. Metadata tags contain information about the file. If the metadata tags for the files on your USB or media player contain no information, the system classifies them as unknown. The system can index up to 50000 tracks on a USB device or media player, and up to 10 devices.

CLIMATE

Touch the climate button on the touchscreen to access the climate control features.

Note: You can switch temperature units between Fahrenheit and Celsius. See **Settings** (page 254).

Accessing the Climate Control Menu



Touch the button to access additional controls for the front climate system.

Directing the Airflow



Touch the button to direct airflow to the windshield air vents and de-mister.

SYNC™ 3 - Vehicles With: Touchscreen Display



Touch the button to direct airflow to the instrument panel air vents.



Touch the button to direct airflow to the footwell air vents.

You can direct air through any combination of these air vents.

Setting the Blower Motor Speed



Touch up or down to increase or decrease the volume of air that circulates in your vehicle.

Setting the Temperature

Touch up or down on the left-hand temperature control to set the left-hand temperature.

Note: *This control also adjusts the right-hand side temperature when you switch off dual zone mode.*

Touch up or down on the right-hand temperature control to set the right-hand temperature.

Switching Auto Mode On and Off



Touch the button to switch on automatic operation, then set the temperature.

The system adjusts the blower motor speed, air distribution, air conditioning operation, and outside or recirculated air to reach and maintain the temperature you have set.

Switching the Air Conditioning On and Off



A pop-up appears on the screen to display the air conditioning options.

MAX A/C: Touch the button to activate and maximize cooling. The driver and passenger temperatures are set to LO, recirculated air flows through the instrument panel vents, air conditioning automatically turns on and the fan automatically adjusts to the highest speed.

A/C: Touch to switch the air conditioning on or off. Use A/C with recirculated air to improve cooling performance and efficiency.

Note: *In certain conditions, such as maximum defrost, the air conditioning compressor may continue to operate even though you switch off the air conditioning.*

Switching the Climate Control On and Off



Touch the button.

Switching the Climate Controlled Seats On and Off



Touch the button to cycle through the various climate controlled seat settings.

Switching Dual Zone Mode On and Off



Touch the button to switch on temperature control for the right-hand side of the vehicle.

Switching the Heated Exterior Mirrors On and Off



Touch the button.

SYNC™ 3 - Vehicles With: Touchscreen Display

Switching the Heated Windshield On and Off



Touch the button to clear the windshield of thin ice and fog. The heated windshield turns off after a short period of time.

Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off



Touch the button to clear the rear window of thin ice and fog.

Switching the Heated Seats On and Off



Touch the button to cycle through the various heat settings.

Switching the Heated Steering Wheel On and Off



Touch the button.

Switching Maximum Air Conditioning On and Off



Touch the button for maximum cooling.

Recirculated air flows through the instrument panel air vents, air conditioning turns on and the blower motor adjusts to the highest speed.

Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off



Touch the button for maximum defrosting.

Air flows through the windshield air vents, and the blower motor adjusts to the highest speed.

You can also use this setting to defog and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice.

Note: To prevent window fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when maximum defrost is on.

Note: The heated rear window also turns on when you select maximum defrost.

Note: Depending on your region, air conditioning turns on.

Switching Recirculated Air On and Off



Touch the button to switch between outside air and recirculated air.

The air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates. This may reduce the time needed to cool the interior, when used with **A/C**, and reduce unwanted odors from entering your vehicle.

Note: Recirculated air may turn off, or prevent you from switching on, in all air flow modes except **MAX A/C** to reduce the risk of fogging. Recirculation may also turn on and off in various air distribution control combinations during hot weather to improve cooling efficiency.

Switching the Ventilated Seats On and Off



Touch the button to cycle through the various ventilated seat settings.

Accessing Rear Climate Controls



Touch the button to access additional controls for the rear climate system.

SYNC™ 3 - Vehicles With: Touchscreen Display

Rear Climate Control Lock Indicator



Touch the button.

When on, you can only operate the rear passenger settings through the front controls.

Switching Rear Auto Mode On and Off



Touch the button to switch on rear automatic operation, then set the temperature.

Switching the Rear Climate Controlled Seats On and Off



Touch the button to cycle through the various climate controlled seat settings.

Switching the Rear Heated Seats On and Off



Touch the button to cycle through the various heat settings.

Switching the Rear Ventilated Seats On and Off



Touch the button to cycle through the various ventilated seat settings.

PHONE



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We

recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Check the compatibility of your device on the local Ford website.

Pairing Your Cell Phone for the First Time

Go to the settings menu on your device and switch **Bluetooth®** on.

Make sure your cell phone is discoverable. See your cell phone's user manual.



Select the phone option on the feature bar.

1. Select **Pair phone**.

Note: A prompt alerts you to search for your vehicle on your cell phone.

2. Select your vehicle on your cell phone.

Note: A number appears on your cell phone and on the touchscreen.

3. Confirm that the number on your cell phone matches the number on the touchscreen.

Note: The touchscreen indicates that you have successfully paired your cell phone.

4. Download the phonebook from your cell phone when you are prompted.

Note: If you pair more than one cell phone, use the phone settings to specify the primary phone. You can change this setting at any time.

Using Your Cell Phone

Recent Call list

Display and select an entry from a list of previous calls.

SYNC™ 3 - Vehicles With: Touchscreen Display

Contacts

Display a smart search form to look up your contacts. Use the List button to alphabetically sort your contacts.

Your phone

Change ring tones, alerts or pair another cell phone.

Change device

Display the list of paired or connected devices that you can select.

Do not disturb

Reject incoming calls and switch ring tones and alerts off.

Phone Keypad

Directly dial a number.

Text messages

Display the cell phone messages.

Siri

Connect to Siri on your iOS device.

Using Text Messaging

Menu Item	Description
Hear it	Hear the text message.
View	View the text message.
Call	Call the sender.
Reply	Reply to the text message with a standard text message.

Apple CarPlay

1. Connect your device to a USB port.
2. Follow the instructions on the touchscreen.

Phone Voice Assistant

Connect to the phone voice service on your Android device.

Text Messaging

Setting Text Message Notification

iOS

1. Go to the settings menu on your cell phone.
2. Select **Bluetooth®**.
3. Select the information icon to the right of your vehicle.
4. Switch text message notification on.

Android

1. Go to the settings menu on your cell phone.
2. Select **Bluetooth®**.
3. Select the profiles option.
4. Select the phone profile.
5. Switch text message notification on.

Note: Certain features of the system are not available when you are using Apple CarPlay.

Switching Apple CarPlay Off

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **Apple CarPlay preferences**.

SYNC™ 3 - Vehicles With: Touchscreen Display

3. Switch **Apple CarPlay** off.

Android Auto

1. Connect your device to a USB port.
2. Follow the instructions on the touchscreen.

Note: You might need to enable Android Auto from the settings menu.

Note: Certain features of the system are not available when you are using Android Auto.

Switching Android Auto Off

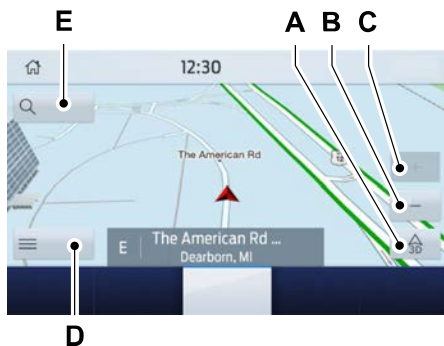
1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **Android Auto**.
3. Switch **Android Auto** off.

NAVIGATION

Note: For more information, refer to the local Ford website.



Select the navigation option on the feature bar.

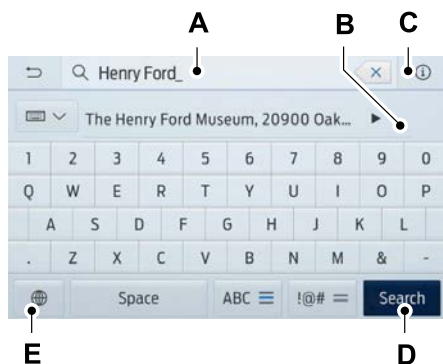


- A Map view menu.
- B Zoom out.

- C Zoom in.
- D Route guidance menu.
- E Destination entry menu.

Setting a Destination

Setting a Destination Using the Text Entry Screen



- A Text entry field.
- B Automatic suggestions based on the text you enter.
- C Information icon.
- D Search.
- E Keyboard settings.

Note: Select one of the suggestions to copy the detail to the text entry field.

Note: You can enter a destination in a number of formats, **city street number**, **city number street**, zip code or point of interest.

Note: You do not have to enter the destination country.

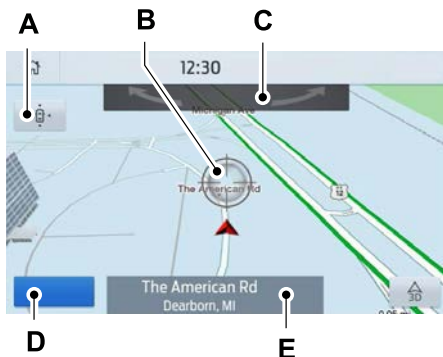
Note: To enter mutated vowels or accented characters, for example **ä** or **é**, press and hold the corresponding character on the keyboard.

SYNC™ 3 - Vehicles With: Touchscreen Display

Select **Search**.

Select **Start** to begin route guidance.

Setting a Destination Using the Map Screen



- A Re-center the map.
- B Selected location.
- C 3D map rotation. Swipe left or right.
- D Start route guidance.
- E Destination name.

Select the location on the map.

Select **Start** to begin route guidance.

Changing the Format of the Map

Display the map in one of the following formats:

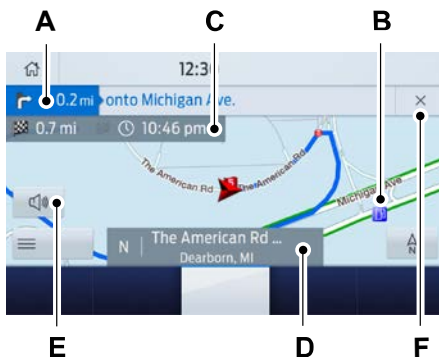
- A two-dimensional map with the direction you are traveling toward the top of the screen.
- A two-dimensional map with north toward the top of the screen.
- A three-dimensional map with the direction you are traveling toward the front.

Zoom

Display more or less detail on the map.

Note: You can use pinch gestures to zoom in and out. Place two fingers on the screen and move them apart to zoom in. Place two fingers on the screen and bring them together to zoom out.

Route Guidance



- A Turn indicator. Select to hear the last guidance prompt.
- B Point of interest.
- C Estimated time of arrival, distance to destination or time to destination.
- D Current road.
- E Mute guidance prompts.
- F Cancel route guidance.

Note: To change guidance prompt volume, turn the volume control when a guidance prompt plays.

SYNC™ 3 - Vehicles With: Touchscreen Display

Route Guidance Menu

Menu Item	Description
Screen view	Adjust your map preferences for when route guidance is active.
Full map	View a full screen map when route guidance is active.
Motorway exit info	View exit information for your current route.
Turn list	View the turn list for your current route. Select a road to avoid it.
Traffic list	View traffic nearby or on your current route. ¹
Navigation settings	Adjust navigation settings.
Where am I?	View information about your current location.
Cancel route	Cancel route guidance.
Show route	View the entire current route on the map.
Re-route	View an alternative route compared to your current one.
Edit waypoints	Change the order or remove waypoints.
Optimise order	The system determines the order of waypoints for you.
Start	Go to the next screen and start the new route.
Search	Enter a destination address.
Home	Set your saved home address as your destination
Work	Set your saved place of work as your destination.
Favourites	Display and select from a list of favorite destinations.
Previous destinations	Display and select from a list of previous destinations.
POI	Display the point of interest categories.

¹ Reliant upon traffic message channel or live traffic.

Adjusting the Guidance Prompt Volume

Turn the volume control when a guidance prompt plays to adjust the volume.

Note: *If you have inadvertently adjusted the volume to zero, press the turn indicator button to play the last voice prompt and then adjust the volume to the desired level.*

SYNC™ 3 - Vehicles With: Touchscreen Display

Muting Guidance Prompts



Select the mute option on the screen to mute guidance prompts.

Note: The system mutes the next and all future guidance prompts.

Adding Waypoints

You can add a waypoint to a navigation route as a destination along your route. You can add up to five waypoints.

1. Select the search option on the map.
2. Set a destination.
3. Select the flag icon.
4. Select **Start**.

Canceling Route Guidance

Canceling Route Guidance From the Route Guidance Menu



Select the route guidance menu option on the active guidance screen.

Select **Cancel route**.

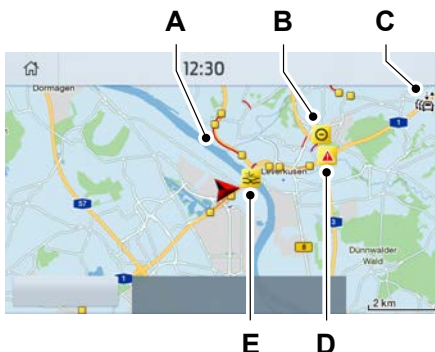
Canceling Route Guidance From the Main Map



Select the icon in the upper right-hand corner of the main map to cancel route guidance.

Live Traffic (If Equipped)

Live traffic provides near real-time traffic information to help you plan the fastest route to your destination. You must have an active subscription for Live Traffic.



- A Traffic congestion.
- B Road closure.
- C Live traffic active.
- D Urgent warning.
- E Traffic incident.

Switching Live Traffic On

Note: Make sure that the modem is enabled.

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **FordPass Connect**.
3. Select **Connectivity settings**.
4. Switch **Vehicle connectivity** on.
5. Switch **Location** on.
6. Switch **Vehicle data & Remote ctrl** on.
7. Switch **Live Traffic** on.

Navigation Map Updates

Please check the local Ford website or contact your dealership for navigation map updates.

SYNC™ 3 - Vehicles With: Touchscreen Display

HERE is the digital map provider for the navigation application. If you find map data errors, you can report them directly to HERE by visiting www.here.com. HERE evaluates all reported map errors and responds with the result of their investigation by e-mail.

APPS

Note: For more information about available apps, supported devices and troubleshooting, refer to our local website.

When you start an app through the system for the first time, you could be asked to grant certain permissions. You can review and change the permissions that you have granted at any time when your vehicle is not moving. See **Settings** (page 254).

Note: We recommend that you check your data plan before using your apps through the system. Using them could result in additional charges.

Note: We recommend that you check the app provider's terms and conditions and privacy policy before using their app.

Note: Make sure that you have an active account for apps that you want to use through the system.

Note: Some apps will work with no setup. Others require you to configure some personal settings before you can use them.

Using Apps on an iOS Device



Select the apps option on the feature bar.

1. If your device is connected via USB, switch Apple CarPlay off. See **Phone** (page 217).
2. Connect your device to a USB port or pair and connect using Bluetooth.
3. If prompted to enable CarPlay, select **Disable**.

4. Start the apps on your device that you want to use through SYNC.

Note: If you close the apps on your device, you will not be able to use them through the system.

5. Select the app that you want to use on the touchscreen.

Note: Connect your device to a USB port if you want to use a navigation app. When using a navigation app, keep your device unlocked and the app open.

Using Apps on an Android Device



Select the apps option on the feature bar.

1. If your device is connected via USB, switch Android Auto off. See **Phone** (page 217).
2. Switch on **Enable Mobile apps via USB** in the Mobile Apps Settings tile.
3. Pair your device. See **Phone** (page 217).
4. Start the apps on your device that you want to use through SYNC.

Note: If you close the apps on your device, you will not be able to use them through the system.

5. Select **Find mobile apps**.

Note: The system searches and connects to compatible apps that are running on your device.

6. Select the app that you want to use on the touchscreen.

Note: Mobile Apps on your device use the USB port to establish a connection with SYNC. Some devices may lose the ability to play music over USB when Mobile Apps are enabled.

Using Mobile Navigation on an Android Device

1. Connect your device to a USB port.

SYNC™ 3 - Vehicles With: Touchscreen Display

2. Switch Android Auto off. See **Phone** (page 217).
3. Switch on **Enable Mobile apps via USB** in the Mobile Apps Settings tile.
4. Select the apps option on the feature bar.
5. Select the navigation app that you want to use on the touchscreen.

Note: When using a navigation app, keep your device unlocked and the app open.

Note: Mobile Apps on your device use the USB port to establish a connection with SYNC. Some devices may lose the ability to play music over USB when Mobile Apps are enabled.

SETTINGS



Select the settings option on the feature bar.

Select a tile to access the settings.



Select the option to display extra information.

Ambient Lighting

You can adjust the ambient lighting settings.

Android Auto

You can switch Android Auto on and off.

Apple CarPlay

You can switch Apple CarPlay on and off.

Audio

You can adjust the audio settings.

Automatic Updates

You can switch automatic updates on and off and adjust the settings.

Bluetooth®

You can switch Bluetooth on and off and pair your cell phone.

Clock

You can adjust the clock settings.

Display

You can adjust display settings like brightness and auto dim.

Emergency Assistance (If Equipped)

You can switch Emergency Assistance on and off.

FordPass

You can adjust the FordPass settings.

General

You can adjust settings like language, measurement units, or reset the system.

Mobile Apps

You can adjust permissions, enable, disable, and update mobile apps.

Navigation (If Equipped)

You can adjust navigation settings like map preferences and route guidance.

Phone

You can connect and disconnect your device, or manage the connected device settings.

Seats (If Equipped)

You can adjust the position and the massage function of the seats.

Sound

You can adjust the sound settings.

SYNC™ 3 - Vehicles With: Touchscreen Display

Valet Mode (If Equipped)

You can enable and disable the valet mode.

Vehicle (If Equipped)

You can adjust the camera settings.

Voice Control

You can adjust the voice control settings.

Wi-Fi

You can switch Wi-Fi on and off and adjust the settings.

SYNC™ 3 - Vehicles With: Touchscreen Display

SYNC™ 3 TROUBLESHOOTING

Voice Recognition

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
The system does not understand what I am saying.	– You are using the wrong voice commands. • See Using Voice Recognition (page 236). • For a complete list of voice commands, refer to the local Ford website. – You are speaking too soon. • Wait for the voice prompt before you speak.
The system does not understand the name of a track or artist.	– Bluetooth® does not support voice commands. • Connect your device to a USB port. • If you have an iOS device, press and hold the voice control button on the steering wheel to use Siri to play specific tracks. – You are using the wrong voice commands. • See Using Voice Recognition (page 236). • For a complete list of voice commands, refer to the local Ford website. – You are not saying the name exactly as it appears on your device. • Say the name of the track or artist exactly as it appears on your device. Spell out any abbreviations in the name. The song or artist name may have some special characters that are not being recognized by the system. – The name contains special characters, for example *, - or +. • Rename the files on your device or use the touchscreen to select and play the track.

SYNC™ 3 - Vehicles With: Touchscreen Display

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
The system does not understand the name of a contact in the phonebook on my device and calls the wrong contact.	– You are not saying the name exactly as it appears on your device. • Say the first and last name of the contact exactly as it appears on your device. Spell out any abbreviations in the name. – The name contains special characters, for example *, - or +. • Rename the contact on your device or use the touchscreen to select and call the contact.
The system does not understand foreign names of contacts in the phonebook on my device.	– You are not saying the name exactly as it appears on your device. • Say the first and last name of the contact exactly as it appears on your device. The system applies phonetic pronunciation rules of the selected language to the names of contacts in the phonebook on your device. Select the name of the contact on the touchscreen and use the Hear it option to get an idea of how the system expects you to pronounce it.
The system voice prompts and the pronunciation of some words does not seem to be very accurate.	– Device limitation. • The system uses text-to-speech technology and uses a synthetically generated voice rather than pre-recorded human voice.

USB and Bluetooth® Audio

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
I cannot connect my device.	– Device malfunction. • Disconnect your device. Switch your device off, reset it and try again. – Cable connection issue. • Correctly connect the cable to your device and the vehicle USB port. – Incompatible cable. • Use the cable recommended by the manufacturer of your device.

SYNC™ 3 - Vehicles With: Touchscreen Display

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
	– Incorrect device settings. • Make sure that your device does not have an auto-install program or active security settings. • Check that your device is not set only to charge. – Device lock screen enabled. • Unlock your device before connecting it.
The system does not recognize my device.	– Device limitation. • Do not leave your device in your vehicle during very hot or very cold weather conditions.
The system does not understand the name of a track or artist.	– Bluetooth® does not support voice commands. • Connect your device to a USB port. • If you have an iOS device, press and hold the voice control button on the steering wheel to use Siri to play specific tracks.
I cannot stream audio from my Bluetooth® device.	– Incompatible device. • Check the compatibility of your device on the local Ford website. – Device not connected. • Pair your device. See Phone (page 247). – Media player not running. • Start the media player on your device.
The system does not recognize the music on my device.	– Missing or incorrect audio file metadata, for example artist, song title, album or genre. • Repair the files on your device. – Corrupt files. • Repair the files on your device. – Copyright protected files. • Use a device that contains files that are not copyright protected. – Unsupported file format. • Repair or convert the files to a supported format. See Entertainment (page 242).

SYNC™ 3 - Vehicles With: Touchscreen Display

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
	– Device indexing required. • Re-index your device. See Settings (page 254). – Device lock screen enabled. • Unlock your device before connecting it.
Sometimes I cannot hear a track playing on my device.	– Device malfunction. • Disconnect your device. Switch your device off, reset it and try again.
When I disconnect my iOS device the audio volume is set to maximum.	– Device limitation. • Turn the volume down on your device
The system does not play the tracks on my USB drive in the correct order.	If the system does not play the tracks on your USB device in the correct order, the following information could help: – If you are selecting USB as the audio source when the system is still indexing, SYNC plays tracks sorted alphabetically by file name in the root directory. – If you are selecting USB as the audio source after the system has finished indexing, SYNC plays all tracks sorted alphabetically by the title in the ID3 tag regardless of where they are located. SYNC uses the file name if the title in the ID3 Tag does not exist. – If you are selecting the option to play all tracks from the browsing menu, SYNC plays all tracks sorted alphabetically by the title in the ID3 tag regardless of where they are located. SYNC uses the file name if the title in the ID3 Tag does not exist. – If you are selecting a track when using the explore device option, SYNC plays tracks sorted alphabetically by file name in the folder you have selected. SYNC then plays all tracks in any subfolders in the folder you have selected.

SYNC™ 3 - Vehicles With: Touchscreen Display

Phone

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
During a call, I can hear excessive background noise.	– Incorrect cell phone settings. • Check and adjust the audio settings on your cell phone. Refer to your cell phone's user manual.
During a call, I can hear the other person but they cannot hear me.	– Cell phone malfunction. • Switch your cell phone off, reset it and try again. – Cell phone microphone muted. • Unmute your cell phone microphone.
During a call, I cannot hear the other person and they cannot hear me.	– System restart required. • Restart the system. Switch the ignition off and open the door. Close the door and lock the vehicle. Wait until the touchscreen is off and any illuminated USB ports are not illuminated. Unlock the vehicle, switch the ignition on and try again.
I cannot download phonebook.	– Incompatible cell phone. • Check the compatibility of your cell phone on the local Ford website. – Incorrect cell phone settings. • Allow the system to retrieve contacts from your cell phone. Refer to your cell phone's user manual. – Incorrect system settings. • Switch automatic phonebook download on. See Settings (page 254). – Cell phone malfunction. • Switch your cell phone off, reset it and try again.
A message displays suggesting that my phonebook has downloaded but it is empty or it has missing contacts.	– Incorrect cell phone settings. • Allow the system to retrieve contacts from your cell phone. Refer to your cell phone's user manual. • Check the location of the missing contacts on your cell phone. If they are stored on the SIM card, move them to the cell phone memory. – Incorrect system settings. • Switch automatic phonebook download on. See Settings (page 254).

SYNC™ 3 - Vehicles With: Touchscreen Display

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
I cannot connect my cell phone.	– Incompatible cell phone. • Check the compatibility of your cell phone on the local Ford website. – Cell phone malfunction. • Switch your cell phone off, reset it and try again. • Install the latest cell phone firmware. • Delete your device from system and delete SYNC from your device and try again. • Switch automatic phonebook download off. See Settings (page 254).
Text messaging does not work.	– Incompatible cell phone. • Check the compatibility of your cell phone on the local Ford website. – Cell phone malfunction. • Switch your cell phone off, reset it and try again.
I cannot hear text messages.	– Incompatible cell phone. • Check the compatibility of your cell phone on the local Ford website.

Navigation (If Equipped)

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
I cannot enter a street name when I am abroad.	– Incorrect entry method. • Enter the street name with the country.
The system does not recognize coordinates.	– You are using the wrong coordinates format. • Use the format ##. #####, ##. ##### (for N/S, E/W). Add a minus before coordinates if the direction is West and keep a positive value if the direction is East, for example 12.5412 means East and -12.5412 means West.

SYNC™ 3 - Vehicles With: Touchscreen Display

Apps

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
The system cannot find any apps.	– Incompatible device. • You need an Android device with OS 4.3 or higher or an iOS device with iOS 8.0 or higher. Pair and connect your Android device to find AppLink compatible apps. Connect your Android or iOS device to a USB port or pair and connect using Bluetooth®.
I have a compatible device and it is correctly connected but the system still cannot find any apps.	– AppLink compatible apps not installed on your device. • Download and install the latest version of the app. – AppLink compatible apps not running on your device. • Start the apps to allow the system to find them and make sure you sign in to any apps if required. – Incorrect app settings. • Check and adjust the app settings on your device and allow SYNC to access the app if required.
I have a compatible device, it is correctly connected and my apps are running but the system still cannot find any apps.	– Apps failed to fully close. • Restart the apps and try again. • If you have an Android device with apps that have an exit or quit option, use this and then restart the apps. Alternatively, use the force stop option in the settings menu on your device. • If you have an iOS device with iOS 7.0 or higher, tap the home button on your device twice and then swipe the app upward to close it.
I have an Android device that is correctly connected, I have restarted my apps and they are running but the system still cannot find them.	– An issue on some older versions of the Android operating system could result in apps not being found. • Switch Bluetooth® off and on again to force the system to reconnect to your device.

SYNC™ 3 - Vehicles With: Touchscreen Display

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
I have an iOS device that is correctly connected, I have restarted my apps and they are running but the system still cannot find them.	– Cable connection issue. • Disconnect the cable from your device, wait for a moment and then connect it again to force the system to reconnect to your device.
I have an Android device running a media app which the system has found but I cannot hear the sound or the sound is very quiet.	– Device volume is low. • Turn the volume up on your device.
I have an Android device running a number of compatible apps but the system cannot find all of them.	– Device limitation. Some Android devices have a limited number of Bluetooth® ports that apps can use to connect. If you have more apps running on your device than the number of available Bluetooth® ports, the system cannot find all of them. • Close some of the apps to allow the system to find those that you want to use.

SYNC™ 3 - Vehicles With: Touchscreen Display

Wi-Fi Connectivity

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
I cannot connect to a Wi-Fi network.	– Password error. • Enter the correct network password. – Weak network signal. • Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi hotspot or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed. – Multiple access points in range with the same SSID. • Use a unique name for your SSID. Do not use the default name unless it contains a unique identifier, for example as part of the MAC address.
The Wi-Fi connection disconnects after successful connection.	– Weak network signal. • Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi hotspot or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.
I am close to a Wi-Fi hotspot but the network signal strength is weak.	– Obstructed network signal. • If your vehicle has a heated windshield, position your vehicle so that the windshield is not facing the Wi-Fi hotspot. • If your vehicle has metallic tinting on the windows but not on the windshield, position your vehicle so that the windshield is facing the Wi-Fi hotspot or open the windows that are facing the hotspot. • If your vehicle has metallic tinting on the windows and the windshield, open the windows that are facing the hotspot. • If your vehicle is in a garage and you have the garage door closed, open the garage door.

SYNC™ 3 - Vehicles With: Touchscreen Display

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
I cannot see a network in the list of available networks that I expect to see.	– Hidden network. • Make the network visible and try again.
Software downloads take too long.	– Weak network signal • Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi hotspot or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed. – Wi-Fi hotspot in high demand or has a slow Internet connection. • Use a more reliable Wi-Fi hotspot.
The system seems to connect to a Wi-Fi network and the signal strength is excellent but the software does not update.	– No software update available. – Wi-Fi network requires a subscription or acceptance of terms and conditions. • Test the connection using another device. If the network requires a subscription or acceptance of terms and conditions, contact the network service provider.

Resetting the System

1. Simultaneously press and hold the seek up and the audio unit power buttons until the screen goes black.
2. Wait three minutes to allow the system to complete the reset.
3. Press the audio unit power button to switch the system on.

Note: You can reset the system to restore functionality that has stopped working. The system reset is designed to restore functionality and not delete any data that you have stored.

Additional Information and Assistance

For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer or refer to the local Ford website.

Appendices

ELECTROMAGNETIC COMPATIBILITY



WARNING: Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the airbag cover, on the side of the front or rear seatbacks, or in areas that may come into contact with a deploying airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.



WARNING: Do not fasten antenna cables to vehicle wiring, fuel pipes and brake pipes.

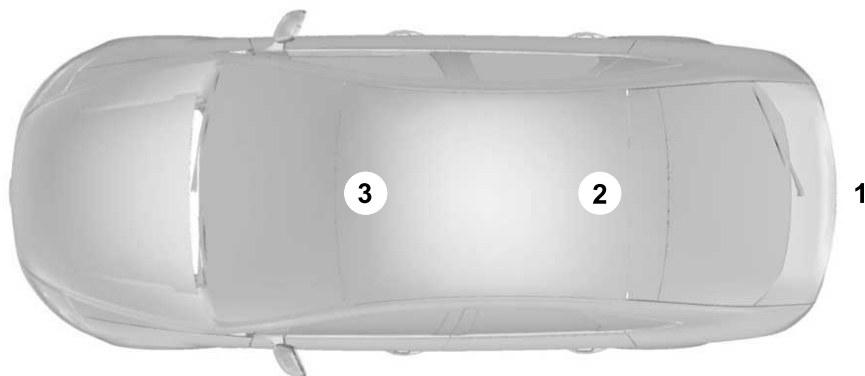


WARNING: Keep antenna and power cables at least 10 cm (4 in) from any electronic modules and airbags.

Note: We test and certify your vehicle to meet electromagnetic compatibility legislation. It is your responsibility to make sure that any equipment an authorized dealer installs on your vehicle complies with applicable local legislation and other requirements. Installation of some aftermarket electronic devices could degrade the performance of vehicle functions, which use radio frequency signals such as broadcast radio receiver, tire pressure monitoring system, push button start, **Bluetooth®** connectivity or satellite navigation.

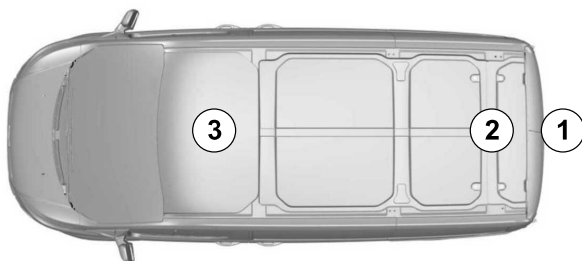
Note: Any radio frequency transmitter equipment in your vehicle (such as cellular telephones and amateur radio transmitters) must keep to the parameters in the following illustrations and table. We do not provide any other special provisions or conditions for installations or use.

Car/SUV

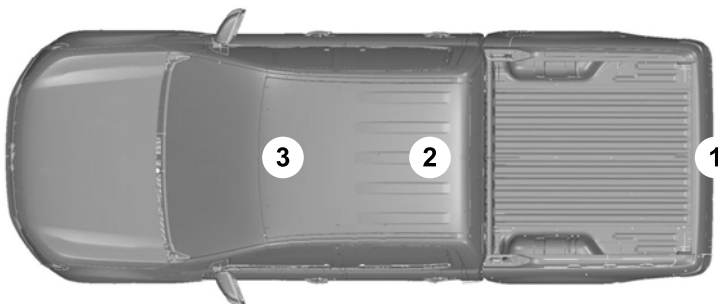


Appendices

Van



Truck



Appendices

Frequency Band MHz	Maximum Output Power Watt (Peak RMS)	Antenna Positions
1-30	50	1
50-54	50	2, 3
68-88	50	2, 3
142-176	50	2, 3
380-512	50	2, 3
806-870	10	2, 3

Appendices

END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

VEHICLE SOFTWARE END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT (EULA) (if

Equipped)

- You ("You" or "Your" as applicable) have acquired a vehicle having several devices, including SYNC ® and various control modules, ("DEVICES") that include software licensed or owned by Ford Motor Company and its affiliates ("FORD MOTOR COMPANY"). Those software products of FORD MOTOR COMPANY origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and "online" or electronic documentation ("SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.
- The SOFTWARE may interface with and/or communicate with, or may be later upgraded to interface with and/or communicate with additional software and/or systems provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY.

IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO THIS END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT ("EULA") DO NOT USE THE DEVICES OR COPY THE SOFTWARE. ANY USE OF THE SOFTWARE, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO USE ON THE DEVICES, WILL CONSTITUTE YOUR AGREEMENT TO THIS EULA (OR RATIFICATION OF ANY PREVIOUS CONSENT).

GRANT OF SOFTWARE LICENSE: This EULA grants you the following license:

- You may use the SOFTWARE as installed on the DEVICES and as otherwise interfacing with systems and/or services provide by or through FORD MOTOR COMPANY or its third party software and service providers.

Description of Other Rights and Limitations

- **Speech Recognition:** If the SOFTWARE includes speech recognition component(s), you should understand that speech recognition is an inherently statistical process and that recognition errors are inherent in the process. Neither FORD MOTOR COMPANY nor its suppliers shall be liable for any damages arising out of errors in the speech recognition process. It is your responsibility to monitor any speech recognition functions included in the system.
- **Limitations on Reverse Engineering, Decompilation and Disassembly:** You may not reverse engineer, decompile, translate, disassemble or attempt to discover any source code or underlying ideas or algorithms of the SOFTWARE nor permit others to reverse engineer, decompile or disassemble the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation or to the extent as may be permitted by the licensing terms governing use of any open source components included with the SOFTWARE.
- **Limitations on Distributing, Copying, Modifying and Creating Derivative Works:** You may not distribute, copy, make modifications to or create derivative works based on the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation or to the extent as may be permitted by the licensing terms governing use of any open source components included with the SOFTWARE.

Appendices

- **Single EULA:** The end user documentation for the DEVICES and related systems and services may contain multiple EULAs, such as multiple translations and/or multiple media versions (e.g., in the user documentation and in the software). Even if you receive multiple EULAs, you are licensed to use only one (1) copy of the SOFTWARE.
- **SOFTWARE Transfer:** You may permanently transfer your rights under this EULA only as part of a sale or transfer of the DEVICES, provided you retain no copies, you transfer all of the SOFTWARE (including all component parts, the media and printed materials, any upgrades, and, if applicable, the Certificate(s) of Authenticity), and the recipient agrees to the terms of this EULA. If the SOFTWARE is an upgrade, any transfer must include all prior versions of the SOFTWARE.
- **Termination:** Without prejudice to any other rights, FORD MOTOR COMPANY may terminate this EULA if you fail to comply with the terms and conditions of this EULA.
- **Internet-Based Services Components:** The SOFTWARE may contain components that enable and facilitate the use of certain Internet-based services. You acknowledge and agree that FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, its affiliates and/or its designated agent may automatically check the version of the SOFTWARE and/or its components that you are utilizing and may provide upgrades or supplements to the SOFTWARE that may be automatically downloaded to your DEVICES.
- **Additional Software/Services:** The SOFTWARE may permit FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, its affiliates and/or its designated agent to provide or make available to you SOFTWARE updates, supplements, add-on components, or Internet-based services components of the SOFTWARE after the date you obtain your initial copy of the SOFTWARE ("Supplemental Components".) SOFTWARE updates may cause you to incur additional charges from your wireless service provider. If FORD MOTOR COMPANY or third party software and services suppliers provide or make available to you Supplemental Components and no other EULA terms are provided along with the Supplemental Components, then the terms of this EULA shall apply. FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent reserve the right to discontinue without liability any Internet-based services provided to you or made available to you through the use of the SOFTWARE.

Appendices

- **Links to Third Party Sites:** The SOFTWARE may provide you with the ability to link to third party sites. The third party sites are not under the control of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent. Neither FORD MOTOR COMPANY nor its affiliates nor its designated agent are responsible for (i) the contents of any third party sites, any links contained in third party sites, or any changes or updates to third party sites, or (ii) webcasting or any other form of transmission received from any third party sites. If the SOFTWARE provides links to third party sites, those links are provided to you only as a convenience, and the inclusion of any link does not imply an endorsement of the third party site by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent.
- **Obligation to Drive Responsibly:** You recognize your obligation to drive responsibly and keep attention on the road. You will read and abide with the DEVICES operating instructions particularly as they pertain to safety and you agree to assume any risk associated with the use of the DEVICES.

UPGRADES AND RECOVERY MEDIA:

If the SOFTWARE is provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY separate from the DEVICES on media such as a ROM chip, CD ROM disk(s) or via web download or other means, and is labeled "For Upgrade Purposes Only" or "For Recovery Purposes Only" you may install one (1) copy of such SOFTWARE onto the DEVICES as a replacement copy for the existing SOFTWARE, and use it in accordance with this EULA, including any additional EULA terms accompanying the upgrade SOFTWARE.

INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS:

All title and intellectual property rights in and to the SOFTWARE (including but not limited to any images, photographs, animations, video, audio, music, text and "applets" incorporated into the SOFTWARE), the accompanying printed materials, and any copies of the SOFTWARE, are owned by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, or its affiliates or suppliers. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. You may not copy the printed materials accompanying the SOFTWARE. All title and intellectual property rights in and to the content which may be accessed through use of the SOFTWARE is the property of the respective content owner and may be protected by applicable copyright or other intellectual property laws and treaties. This EULA grants you no rights to use such content outside its intended use. All rights not specifically granted under this EULA are reserved by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates, and third party software and service providers and suppliers. Use of any on-line services which may be accessed through the SOFTWARE may be governed by the respective terms of use relating to such services. If this SOFTWARE contains documentation that is provided only in electronic form, you may print one copy of such electronic documentation.

EXPORT RESTRICTIONS: You acknowledge that the SOFTWARE is subject to U.S. and European Union export jurisdiction. You agree to comply with all applicable international and national laws that apply to the SOFTWARE, including the U.S. Export Administration Regulations, as well as end-user, end-use and destination restrictions issued by U.S. and other governments.

Appendices

TRADEMARKS: This EULA does not grant you any rights in connection with any trademarks or service marks of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates, and third party software and service providers.

The **Bluetooth®** word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by **Bluetooth SIG, Inc.** and any use of such marks by Ford Motor Company is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

PRODUCT SUPPORT: Please refer to FORD MOTOR COMPANY instructions provided in the documentation for the DEVICES product support, such as the vehicle owner guide.

Should you have any questions concerning this EULA, or if you desire to contact FORD MOTOR COMPANY for any other reason, please refer to the address provided in the documentation for the DEVICES.

No Liability for Certain Damages: EXCEPT AS PROHIBITED BY LAW, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR SERVICES SUPPLIERS, AND THEIR AFFILIATES SHALL HAVE NO LIABILITY FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES ARISING FROM OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THE SOFTWARE. THIS LIMITATION SHALL APPLY EVEN IF ANY REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE. THERE ARE NO WARRANTIES OTHER THAN THOSE THAT MAY BE EXPRESSLY PROVIDED FOR YOUR NEW VEHICLE.

SYNC® Automotive Important Safety Information Read and follow instructions:

- Before using your SYNC® system, read and follow all instructions and safety information provided in this end user manual ("Owner Guide".) Not following precautions found in the Owner Guide can lead to an accident or other serious injuries.

General Operation

- **Voice Command Control:** Certain functions within the SYNC® system may be accomplished using voice commands. Using voice commands while driving helps you to operate the system without removing your hands from the wheel or eyes from the road.
- **Prolonged Views of Screen:** Do not access any function requiring a prolonged view of the screen while you are driving. Pull over in a safe and legal manner before attempting to access a function of the system requiring prolonged attention.
- **Volume Setting:** Do not raise the volume excessively. Keep the volume at a level where you can still hear outside traffic and emergency signals while driving. Driving while unable to hear these sounds could cause an accident.
- **Navigation Features:** Any navigation features included in the system are intended to provide turn by turn instructions to get you to a desired destination. Please make certain all persons using this system carefully read and follow instructions and safety information fully.

Appendices

- **Distraction Hazard:** Any navigation features may require manual (non-verbal) setup. Attempting to perform such set-up or insert data while driving can distract your attention and could cause an accident or other serious injury. Stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting these operations.
- **Let Your Judgment Prevail:** Any navigation features are provided only as an aid. Make your driving decisions based on your observations of local conditions and existing traffic regulations. Any such feature is not a substitute for your personal judgment. Any route suggestions made by this system should never replace any local traffic regulations or your personal judgment or knowledge of safe driving practices.
- **Route Safety:** Do not follow the route suggestions if doing so would result in an unsafe or illegal maneuver, if you would be placed in an unsafe situation, or if you would be directed into an area that you consider unsafe. The driver is ultimately responsible for the safe operation of the vehicle and therefore, must evaluate whether it is safe to follow the suggested directions.
- **Potential Map Inaccuracy:** Maps used by this system may be inaccurate because of changes in roads, traffic controls or driving conditions. Always use good judgment and common sense when following the suggested routes.
- **Emergency Services:** Do not rely on any navigation features included in the system to route you to emergency services. Ask local authorities or an emergency services operator for these locations. Not all emergency services such as police, fire stations, hospitals and clinics are likely to be contained in the map database for such navigation features.

Your Responsibilities and Assumptions of Risk

- You agree to each of the following: (a) Any use of the SOFTWARE while driving an automobile or other vehicle in violation of applicable law or otherwise driving in an unsafe manner presents a significant risk of distracted driving and should not be attempted under any circumstances; (b) Use of the SOFTWARE at excessive volume poses a significant risk of hearing damage and should not be attempted under any circumstances; (c) The SOFTWARE may not be compatible with new or different versions of an operating system, third party software, or third party services, and the SOFTWARE may potentially cause a critical failure of an operating system, third party software, or third party service; (d) Any third party service accessed by or third party software used with the SOFTWARE (i) may charge an additional fee for access, (ii) may not work correctly, on an uninterrupted basis, or error free, (iii) may change streaming formats or discontinue operation, (iv) may contain adult, profane or offensive content; and (v) may contain inaccurate, false or misleading traffic, weather, financial or safety information or other content; and (e) Use of the SOFTWARE may cause you to incur additional charges from your wireless service provider (WSP) and any data or minute calculators that may be included in the software program are for reference only, are not warranted in any way and should not be relied upon in anyway.
- When using the SOFTWARE, you agree to be responsible for and assume the entire risk to the items set forth in Section (a) – (e) above.

Appendices

Disclaimer of Warranty

YOU EXPRESSLY ACKNOWLEDGE AND AGREE THAT USE OF THE DEVICES AND SOFTWARE IS AT YOUR SOLE RISK AND THAT THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO SATISFACTORY QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, COMPATIBILITY, ACCURACY AND EFFORT IS WITH YOU. TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, THE SOFTWARE AND ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES ARE PROVIDED "AS IS" AND "AS AVAILABLE", WITH ALL FAULTS AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, AND FORD MOTOR COMPANY HEREBY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS WITH RESPECT TO THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, AND THIRD-PARTY SERVICES, EITHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES AND/OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, OF SATISFACTORY QUALITY, OF FITNESS FOR AN PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OF ACCURACY, OF QUIET ENJOYMENT, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD-PARTY RIGHTS. FORD MOTOR COMPANY DOES NOT WARRANT (a) AGAINST INTERFERENCE WITH YOUR ENJOYMENT OF THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES, (b) THAT THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL MEET YOUR REQUIREMENTS, (c) THAT THE OPERATION OF THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED OR ERROR-FREE, (d) OR THAT DEFECTS IN THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL BE CORRECTED. NO ORAL OR WRITTEN INFORMATION OR ADVICE GIVEN BY FORD MOTOR COMPANY OR ITS AUTHORIZED REPRESENTATIVE SHALL

CREATE A WARRANTY. SHOULD THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES PROVE DEFECTIVE, YOU ASSUME THE ENTIRE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR OR CORRECTION. SOME JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE DISCLAIMER OF IMPLIED WARRANTIES OR LIMITATIONS ON APPLICABLE STATUTORY RIGHTS OF A CONSUMER, SO THE ABOVE DISCLAIMER MAY NOT FULLY APPLY TO YOU. THE SOLE WARRANTY PROVIDED BY FORD MOTOR COMPANY SHALL BE FOUND IN THE WARRANTY INFORMATION INCLUDING WITH YOUR OWNER GUIDE. TO THE EXTENT THAT THERE IS ANY CONFLICT BETWEEN THE TERMS OF THIS SECTION AND THE WARRANTY BOOKLET, THE WARRANTY BOOKLET SHALL CONTROL.

Applicable Law, Venue, Jurisdiction

- The laws of the State of Michigan govern this EULA and Your use of the SOFTWARE. Your use of the SOFTWARE may also be subject to other local, state, national, or international laws. Any litigation arising out of or related to this EULA shall be brought and maintained exclusively in a court of the State of Michigan located in Wayne County or in the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Michigan. You hereby consent to submit to the personal jurisdiction of a court in the State of Michigan located in Wayne County and the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Michigan for any dispute arising out of or relating to this EULA.

Binding Arbitration and Class Action Waiver

(a) Application. This Section applies to any dispute EXCEPT IT DOES NOT INCLUDE A DISPUTE RELATING TO COPYRIGHT INFRINGEMENT, OR TO THE ENFORCEMENT OR VALIDITY OF YOUR, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, OR ANY OF FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S LICENSORS' INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS. Dispute means any dispute, action, or other controversy between You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY, other than the exceptions listed above, concerning the SOFTWARE (including its price) or this EULA, whether in contract, warranty, tort, statute, regulation, ordinance, or any other legal or equitable basis.

(b) Notice of Dispute. In the event of a Dispute, You or FORD MOTOR COMPANY must give the other a "Notice of Dispute", which is a written statement of the name, address, and contact information of the party giving it, the facts giving rise to the dispute, and the relief requested. You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY will attempt to resolve any dispute through informal negotiation within 60 days from the date the Notice of Dispute is sent. After 60 days, You or FORD MOTOR COMPANY may commence arbitration.

(c) Small claims court. You may also litigate any dispute in small claims court in your county of residence or FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S principal place of business, if the dispute meets all requirements to be heard in the small claims court. You may litigate in small claims court whether or not You negotiated informally first.

(d) Binding arbitration. If You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY, do not resolve any dispute by informal negotiation or in small claims court, any other effort to resolve the dispute will be conducted exclusively by binding arbitration. You are giving up

the right to litigate (or participate in as a party or class member) all disputes in court before a judge or jury. Instead, all disputes will be resolved before a neutral arbitrator, whose decision will be final except for a limited right of appeal under the Federal Arbitration Act. Any court with jurisdiction over the parties may enforce the arbitrator's award.

(e) Class action waiver. Any proceedings to resolve or litigate any dispute in any forum will be conducted solely on an individual basis. Neither you nor FORD MOTOR COMPANY, will seek to have any dispute heard as a class action, as a private attorney general action, or in any other proceeding in which any party acts or proposes to act in a representative capacity. No arbitration or proceeding will be combined with another without the prior written consent of all parties to all affected arbitrations or proceedings.

(f) Arbitration procedure. Any arbitration will be conducted by the American Arbitration Association (the "AAA"), under its Commercial Arbitration Rules. If You are an individual and use the SOFTWARE for personal or vehicle use, or if the value of the dispute is \$75,000 or less whether or not You are an individual or how You use the SOFTWARE, the AAA Supplementary Procedures for Consumer-Related Disputes will also apply. To commence arbitration, submit a Commercial Arbitration Rules Demand for Arbitration form to the AAA. You may request a telephonic or in-person hearing by following the AAA rules. In a dispute involving \$10,000 or less, any hearing will be telephonic unless the arbitrator finds good cause to hold an in-person hearing instead. For more information, see adr.org or call 1-800-778-7879. You agree to commence arbitration only in your county of residence or FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S principal place of business. The arbitrator

Appendices

may award the same damages to You individually as a court could. The arbitrator may award declaratory or injunctive relief only to You individually, and only to the extent required to satisfy Your individual claim.

(g) Arbitration fees and incentives.

- I. Disputes involving \$75,000 or less. FORD MOTOR COMPANY will promptly reimburse your filing fees and pay the AAA's and arbitrator's fees and expenses. If you reject FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S last written settlement offer made before the arbitrator was appointed ("last written offer"), your dispute goes all the way to an arbitrator's decision (called an "award"), and the arbitrator awards you more than the last written offer, FORD MOTOR COMPANY will give you three incentives: (1) pay the greater of the award or \$1,000; (2) pay twice your reasonable attorney's fees, if any; and (3) reimburse any expenses (including expert witness fees and costs) that your attorney reasonably accrues for investigating, preparing, and pursuing your claim in arbitration. The arbitrator will determine the amounts.
- ii. Disputes involving more than \$75,000. The AAA rules will govern payment of filing fees and the AAA's and arbitrator's fees and expenses.
- iii. Disputes involving any amount. In any arbitration you commence, FORD MOTOR COMPANY will seek its AAA or arbitrator's fees and expenses, or Your filing fees it reimbursed, only if the arbitrator finds the arbitration frivolous or brought for an improper purpose. In any arbitration FORD MOTOR COMPANY commences, it will pay all

filing, AAA, and arbitrator's fees and expenses. It will not seek its attorney's fees or expenses from you in any arbitration. Fees and expenses are not counted in determining how much a dispute involves.

(h) Claims or disputes must be filed within one year. To the extent permitted by law, any claim or dispute under this EULA to which this Section applies must be filed within one year in small claims court (Section c) or in arbitration (Section d). The one-year period begins when the claim or dispute first could be filed. If such a claim or dispute is not filed within one year, it is permanently barred.

(i) Severability. If the class action waiver (Section e) is found to be illegal or unenforceable as to all or some parts of a dispute, then that portion of Section e will not apply to those parts. Instead, those parts will be severed and proceed in a court of law, with the remaining parts proceeding in arbitration. If any other provision of that portion Section e is found to be illegal or unenforceable, that provision will be severed with the remainder of Section e remaining in full force and effect.

Telenav Software End User License Agreement

Please read these terms and conditions carefully before you use the TeleNav Software. Your use of the TeleNav Software indicates that you accept these terms and conditions. If you do not accept these terms and conditions, do not break the seal of the package, launch, or otherwise use the TeleNav Software. TeleNav may revise this Agreement and the privacy policy at any time, with or without notice to you. You agree to visit <http://www.telenav.com> from time to time to review the then current version of this Agreement and of the privacy policy.

Appendices

1. Safe and Lawful Use

You acknowledge that devoting attention to the TeleNav Software may pose a risk of injury or death to you and others in situations that otherwise require your undivided attention, and you therefore agree to comply with the following when using the TeleNav Software:

- (a) observe all traffic laws and otherwise drive safely;
- (b) use your own personal judgment while driving. If you feel that a route suggested by the TeleNav Software instructs you to perform an unsafe or illegal maneuver, places you in an unsafe situation, or directs you into an area that you consider to be unsafe, do not follow such instructions;
- (c) do not input destinations, or otherwise manipulate the TeleNav Software, unless your vehicle is stationary and parked;
- (d) do not use the TeleNav Software for any illegal, unauthorized, unintended, unsafe, hazardous, or unlawful purposes, or in any manner inconsistent with this Agreement;
- (e) arrange all GPS and wireless devices and cables necessary for use of the TeleNav Software in a secure manner in your vehicle so that they will not interfere with your driving and will not prevent the operation of any safety device (such as an airbag).

You agree to indemnify and hold TeleNav harmless against all claims resulting from any dangerous or otherwise inappropriate use of the TeleNav Software in any moving vehicle, including as a result of your failure to comply with the directions above.

2. Account Information

You agree: (a) when registering the TeleNav Software, to provide TeleNav with true, accurate, current, and complete information about yourself, and (b) to inform TeleNav promptly of any changes to such information, and to keep it true, accurate, current and complete.

3. Software License

- Subject to your compliance with the terms of this Agreement, TeleNav hereby grants to you a personal, non-exclusive, non-transferable license (except as expressly permitted below in connection with your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software license), without the right to sublicense, to use the TeleNav Software (in object code form only) in order to access and use the TeleNav Software. This license shall terminate upon any termination or expiration of this Agreement. You agree that you will use the TeleNav Software only for your personal business or leisure purposes, and not to provide commercial navigation services to other parties.

3.1 License Limitations

- **(a)** reverse engineer, decompile, disassemble, translate, modify, alter or otherwise change the TeleNav Software or any part thereof; **(b)** attempt to derive the source code, audio library or structure of the TeleNav Software without the prior express written consent of TeleNav; **(c)** remove from the TeleNav Software, or alter, any of TeleNav's or its suppliers' trademarks, trade names, logos, patent or copyright notices, or other notices or markings; **(d)**

Appendices

distribute, sublicense or otherwise transfer the TeleNav Software to others, except as part of your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software; or **(e)** use the TeleNav Software in any manner that

- i. infringes the intellectual property or proprietary rights, rights of publicity or privacy or other rights of any party,
- ii. violates any law, statute, ordinance or regulation, including but not limited to laws and regulations related to spamming, privacy, consumer and child protection, obscenity or defamation, or
- iii. is harmful, threatening, abusive, harassing, tortuous, defamatory, vulgar, obscene, libelous, or otherwise objectionable; and (f) lease, rent out, or otherwise permit unauthorized access by third parties to the TeleNav Software without advanced written permission of TeleNav.

4. Disclaimers

- To the fullest extent permissible pursuant to applicable law, in no event will TeleNav, its licensors and suppliers, or agents or employees of any of the foregoing, be liable for any decision made or action taken by you or anyone else in reliance on the information provided by the TeleNav Software. TeleNav also does not warrant the accuracy of the map or other data used for the TeleNav Software. Such data may not always reflect reality due to, among other things, road closures, construction, weather, new roads and other changing conditions. You are responsible for the entire risk arising out of your use of the TeleNav Software. For example but without limitation, you agree not to rely on the TeleNav Software for critical navigation in areas where the well-being or survival of you or others

is dependent on the accuracy of navigation, as the maps or functionality of the TeleNav Software are not intended to support such high risk applications, especially in more remote geographical areas.

- TELENAV EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMS AND EXCLUDES ALL WARRANTIES IN CONNECTION WITH THE TELENAV SOFTWARE, WHETHER STATUTORY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING ALL WARRANTIES WHICH MAY ARISE FROM COURSE OF DEALING, CUSTOM OR TRADE AND INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS WITH RESPECT TO THE TELENAV SOFTWARE.
- Certain jurisdictions do not permit the disclaimer of certain warranties, so this limitation may not apply to you.

5. Limitation of Liability

- TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED UNDER APPLICABLE LAW, UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL TELENAV OR ITS LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE TO YOU OR TO ANY THIRD PARTY FOR ANY INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, SPECIAL OR EXEMPLARY DAMAGES (INCLUDING IN EACH CASE, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, DAMAGES FOR THE INABILITY TO USE THE EQUIPMENT OR ACCESS DATA, LOSS OF DATA, LOSS OF BUSINESS, LOSS OF PROFITS, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR THE LIKE) ARISING OUT OF THE USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE TELENAV SOFTWARE, EVEN IF TELENAV HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. NOTWITHSTANDING ANY DAMAGES THAT YOU MIGHT INCUR FOR ANY

Appendices

REASON WHATSOEVER (INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ALL DAMAGES REFERENCED HEREIN AND ALL DIRECT OR GENERAL DAMAGES IN CONTRACT, TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE) OR OTHERWISE), THE ENTIRE LIABILITY OF TELENV AND OF ALL OF TELENV'S SUPPLIERS SHALL BE LIMITED TO THE AMOUNT ACTUALLY PAID BY YOU FOR THE TELENV SOFTWARE. SOME STATES AND/OR JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, SO THE ABOVE LIMITATIONS OR EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.

6. Arbitration and Governing Law

- You agree that any dispute, claim or controversy arising out of or relating to this Agreement or the TeleNav Software shall be settled by independent arbitration involving a neutral arbitrator and administered by the American Arbitration Association in the County of Santa Clara, California. The arbitrator shall apply the Commercial Arbitration Rules of the American Arbitration Association, and the judgment upon the award rendered by the arbitrator may be entered by any court having jurisdiction. Note that there is no judge or jury in an arbitration proceeding and the decision of the arbitrator shall be binding upon both parties. You expressly agree to waive your right to a jury trial. This Agreement and performance hereunder will be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of California, without giving effect to its conflict of law provisions. To the extent judicial action is necessary in connection with the binding arbitration, both TeleNav and you agree to submit

to the exclusive jurisdiction of the courts of the County of Santa Clara, California. The United Nations Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods shall not apply.

7. Assignment

- You may not resell, assign, or transfer this Agreement or any of your rights or obligations, except in totality, in connection with your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software, and expressly conditioned upon the new user of the TeleNav Software agreeing to be bound by the terms and conditions of this Agreement. Any such sale, assignment or transfer that is not expressly permitted under this paragraph will result in immediate termination of this Agreement, without liability to TeleNav, in which case you and all other parties shall immediately cease all use of the TeleNav Software. Notwithstanding the foregoing, TeleNav may assign this Agreement to any other party at any time without notice, provided the assignee remains bound by this Agreement.

8. Miscellaneous

8.1

This Agreement constitutes the entire agreement between TeleNav and you with respect to the subject matter hereof.

8.2

Except for the limited licenses expressly granted in this Agreement, TeleNav retains all right, title and interest in and to the TeleNav Software, including without limitation all related intellectual property rights. No licenses or other rights which are not expressly granted in this Agreement are intended to, or shall be, granted or

Appendices

conferred by implication, statute, inducement, estoppel or otherwise, and TeleNav and its suppliers and licensors hereby reserve all of their respective rights other than the licenses explicitly granted in this Agreement.

8.3

By using the TeleNav Software, you consent to receive from TeleNav all communications, including notices, agreements, legally required disclosures or other information in connection with the TeleNav Software (collectively, "Notices") electronically. TeleNav may provide such Notices by posting them on TeleNav's Website or by downloading such Notices to your wireless device. If you desire to withdraw your consent to receive Notices electronically, you must discontinue your use of the TeleNav Software.

8.4

TeleNav's or your failure to require performance of any provision shall not affect that party's right to require performance at any time thereafter, nor shall a waiver of any breach or default of this Agreement constitute a waiver of any subsequent breach or default or a waiver of the provision itself.

8.5

If any provision herein is held unenforceable, then such provision will be modified to reflect the intention of the parties, and the remaining provisions of this Agreement will remain in full force and effect.

8.6

The headings in this Agreement are for convenience of reference only, will not be deemed to be a part of this Agreement, and will not be referred to in connection with the construction or interpretation of this Agreement. As used in this Agreement, the words "include" and "including" and variations thereof, will not be deemed to be terms of limitation, but rather will be deemed to be followed by the words "without limitation".

9. Other Vendors Terms and Conditions

- The Telenav Software utilizes map and other data licensed to Telenav by third party vendors for the benefit of you and other end users. This Agreement includes end-user terms applicable to these companies (included at the end of this Agreement), and thus your use of the Telenav Software is also subject to such terms. You agree to comply with the following additional terms and conditions, which are applicable to Telenav's third party vendor licensors:

9.1 End User Terms Required by HERE North America, LLC

The data ("Data") is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and Telenav ("Telenav") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand.

© 2013 HERE. All rights reserved.

The Data for areas of Canada includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including: © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © Department of Natural Resources Canada.

Appendices

HERE holds a non-exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information.

©United States Postal Service® 2014. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4

The Data for Mexico includes certain data from Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía.

9.2 End User Terms Required by NAV2 (Shanghai) Co., Ltd

The data ("Data") is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and NAV2 (Shanghai) Co., Ltd ("NAV2") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand. 20xx. All rights reserved

Terms and Conditions

Permitted Use. You agree to use this Data together with the Telenav Software solely for the internal business and personal purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble, create any derivative works of, or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

Restrictions. Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by Telenav, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not use this Data (a) with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs.

Warning. The Data may contain inaccurate or incomplete information due to the passage of time, changing circumstances, sources used and the nature of collecting comprehensive geographic data, any of which may lead to incorrect results.

No Warranty. This Data is provided to you "as is," and you agree to use it at your own risk. Telenav and its licensors (and their licensors and suppliers) make no guarantees, representations or warranties of any kind, express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, content, quality, accuracy, completeness, effectiveness, reliability, fitness for a particular purpose, usefulness, use or results to be obtained from this Data, or that the Data or server will be uninterrupted or error-free.

Disclaimer of Warranty: TELENAV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A

Appendices

PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain warranty exclusions, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Disclaimer of Liability: TELENV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF TELENV OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain liability exclusions or damages limitations, so to that extent the above may not apply to you.

Export Control. You shall not export from anywhere any part of the Data or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations, including but not limited to the laws, rules and regulations administered by the Office of Foreign Assets Control of the U.S. Department of Commerce and the Bureau of Industry and Security of the U.S. Department of Commerce. To the extent that any such

export laws, rules or regulations prohibit HERE from complying with any of its obligations hereunder to deliver or distribute Data, such failure shall be excused and shall not constitute a breach of this Agreement.

Entire Agreement. These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between Telenav (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

Governing Law. The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the State of Illinois [insert "Netherlands" where European HERE Data is used], without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. You agree to submit to the jurisdiction of the State of Illinois [insert "The Netherlands" where European HERE Data is used] for any and all disputes, claims and actions arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder.

Government End Users. If the Data is being acquired by or on behalf of the United States government or any other entity seeking or applying rights similar to those customarily claimed by the United States government, this Data is a "commercial item" as that term is defined at 48 C.F.R. ("FAR") 2.101, is licensed in accordance with these End-User Terms, and each copy of Data delivered or otherwise furnished shall be marked and embedded as appropriate with the following "Notice of Use," and shall be treated in accordance with such Notice:

Appendices

NOTICE OF USE

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/
SUPPLIER) NAME: HERE

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/
SUPPLIER) ADDRESS: c/o Nokia, 425
West Randolph Street, Chicago, Illinois
60606

This Data is a commercial item as
defined in FAR 2.101 and is subject to
these End-User Terms under which this
Data was provided.

© 1987 – 2014 HERE – All rights reserved.

If the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official refuses to use the legend provided herein, the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official must notify HERE prior to seeking additional or alternative rights in the Data.

I. US/Canada Territory

A. United States Data. The End-User Terms for any Application containing Data for the United States shall contain the following notices:

"HERE holds a non-exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information."

"©United States Postal Service® 20XX. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4."

B. Canada Data. The following provisions apply to the Data for Canada, which may include or reflect data from third party licensors ("Third Party Data"), including Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada ("Her Majesty"), Canada Post Corporation ("Canada Post") and the Department of Natural Resources of Canada ("NRCan"):

1. Disclaimer and Limitation: Client agrees that its use of the Third Party Data is subject to the following provisions:

a. Disclaimer: The Third Party Data is licensed on an "as is" basis. The licensors of such data, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, make no guarantees, representations or warranties respecting such data, either express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, effectiveness, completeness, accuracy or fitness for a particular purpose.

b. Limitation on Liability: The Third Party Data licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable: (i) in respect of any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action alleging any loss, injury or damages, direct or indirect, which may result from the use or possession of such Data; or (ii) in any way for loss of revenues or contracts, or any other consequential loss of any kind resulting from any defect in the Data.

Appendices

2. Copyright Notice: In connection with each copy of all or any portion of the Data for the Territory of Canada, Client shall affix in a conspicuous manner the following copyright notice on at least one of: (i) the label for the storage media of the copy; (ii) the packaging for the copy; or (iii) other materials packaged with the copy, such as user manuals or end user license agreements: "This data includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © The Department of Natural Resources Canada. All rights reserved."

3. End-User Terms: Except as otherwise agreed by the parties, in connection with the provision of any portion of the Data for the Territory of Canada to End-Users as may be authorized under the Agreement, Client shall provide such End-Users, in a reasonably conspicuous manner, with terms (set forth with other end user terms required to be provided under the Agreement, or as otherwise may be provided, by Client) which shall include the following provisions on behalf of the Third Party Data licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan:

The Data may include or reflect data of licensors, including Her Majesty the Queen in the Right of Canada ("Her Majesty"), Canada Post Corporation ("Canada Post") and the Department of Natural Resources Canada ("NRCan"). Such data is licensed on an "as is" basis. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, make no guarantees, representations or warranties respecting such data,

either express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, effectiveness, completeness, accuracy or fitness for a particular purpose. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable in respect of any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action alleging any loss, injury or damages, direct or indirect, which may result from the use or possession of the data or the Data. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable in any way for loss of revenues or contracts, or any other consequential loss of any kind resulting from any defect in the data or the Data.

End User shall indemnify and save harmless the licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, and their officers, employees and agents from and against any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action, alleging loss, costs, expenses, damages or injuries (including injuries resulting in death) arising out of the use or possession of the data or the Data.

4. Additional Provisions: The terms contained in this Section are in addition to all of the rights and obligations of the parties under the Agreement. To the extent that any of the provisions of this Section are inconsistent with, or conflict with, any other provisions of the Agreement, the provisions of this Section shall prevail.

Appendices

II. Mexico. The following provision applies to the Data for Mexico, which includes certain data from the Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía (“INEGI”):

A. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging containing Data for Mexico shall contain the following notice:
“Fuente: INEGI (Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía)”

III. Latin America Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Territory	Notice
-----------	--------

Argentina	IGN “INSTITUTO GEOGRAFICO NACIONAL ARGENTINO”
-----------	---

Ecuador	“INSTITUTO GEOGRAFICO MILITAR DEL ECUADOR AUTORIZACION N° IGM-2011-01- PCO-01 DEL 25 DE ENERO DE 2011” “source: © IGN 2009 - BD TOPO ®”
---------	--

Guadeloupe, French Guiana and Martinique Mexico	“Fuente: INEGI (Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía)”
---	---

IV. Middle East Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Country	Notice
---------	--------

Jordan	“© Royal Jordanian Geographic Centre”. The foregoing notice requirement for Jordan Data is a material term of the Agreement. If Client or any of its permitted sublicensees (if any) fail to meet such requirement, HERE shall have the right to terminate Client’s license with respect to the Jordan Data.
--------	--

B. Jordan Data. Client and its permitted sublicensees (if any) are restricted from licensing and/or otherwise distributing HERE’s database for the country of Jordan (“Jordan Data”) for use in Enterprise Applications to (i) non-Jordanian entities for use of the Jordan Data solely in Jordan or (ii) Jordan-based customers. In addition, Client, its permitted sublicensees (if any) and End-Users are restricted from using the Jordan Data in Enterprise Applications if such party is (i) a non-Jordanian entity using the Jordan Data solely in Jordan or (ii) a Jordan-based customer. For purposes of the foregoing, “Enterprise Applications” shall mean Geomarketing applications, GIS applications, mobile business asset management applications, call center applications, telematics applications, public organization Internet applications or for providing geocoding services.

Appendices

V. Europe Territory

A. Use of Certain Traffic Codes in Europe

1. General Restrictions Applicable to Traffic Codes. Client acknowledges and agrees that in certain countries of the Europe Territory, Client will need to obtain rights directly from third party RDS-TMC code providers to receive and use the Traffic Codes in the Data and to deliver to End-Users Transactions in any way derived from or based on such Traffic Codes. For such countries, HERE shall deliver the Data incorporating Traffic Codes to Client only after receiving certification from Client of its having obtained such rights.

2. Display of Third Party Rights Legends for Belgium. Client shall, for each Transaction that uses Traffic Codes for Belgium, provide the following notice to the End-User: "Traffic Codes for Belgium are provided by the Ministerie van de Vlaamse Gemeenschap and the Ministère de l'Équipement et des Transports."

B. Paper Maps. With respect to any license granted to Client relating to making, selling or distributing paper maps (i.e., a map fixed on a paper or paper-like medium): (a) such license with respect to Data for the Territory of Great Britain is conditioned on Client's entering into and complying with a separate written agreement with the Ordnance Survey ("OS") to create and sell paper maps, Client's paying to the OS any and all applicable paper map royalties, and Client's complying with the OS copyright notice requirements; (b) such license for selling or otherwise distributing for charge with respect to Data for the Territory of Czech Republic

is conditioned on Client's obtaining prior written consent from Kartografie a.s.; (c) such license for selling or distributing with respect to Data for the Territory of Switzerland is conditioned on Client's obtaining a permit from Bundesamt für Landestopografie of Switzerland; (d) Client is restricted from using Data for the Territory of France to create paper maps with a scale between 1:5,000 and 1:250,000; and (e) Client is restricted from using any Data to create, sell or distribute paper maps that are the same or substantially similar, in terms of data content and specific use of color, symbols and scale, to paper maps published by the European national mapping agencies, including without limitation, Landvermessungämter of Germany, Topografische Dienst of the Netherlands, Nationaal Geografisch Instituut of Belgium, Bundesamt für Landestopografie of Switzerland, Bundesamt für Eich-und Vermessungswesen of Austria, and the National Land Survey of Sweden.

C. OS Enforcement. Without limiting Section IV(B) above, with respect to Data for the Territory of Great Britain, Client acknowledges and agrees that the Ordnance Survey ("OS") may bring a direct action against Client to enforce compliance with the OS copyright notice (see Section IV(D) below) and paper map requirements (see Section IV(B) above) contained in this Agreement.

D. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Country(ies) Notice

Appendices

Austria	"© Bundesamt für Eich- und Vermessungswesen"	Spain	"Información geográfica propiedad del CNIG"
Croatia Cyprus, Estonia, Latvia, Lithuania, Moldova, Poland, Slovenia and/or Ukraine	"© EuroGeographics"	Sweden	"Based upon electronic data © National Land Survey Sweden."
France	"source: © IGN 2009 – BD TOPO ®"	Switzerland	"Topografische Grundlage: © Bundesamt für Landestopographie."
Germany	"Die Grundlagendaten wurden mit Genehmigung der zuständigen Behörden entnommen"	E. Respective Country Distribution. Client acknowledges that HERE has not received approvals to distribute map data for the following countries in such respective countries: Albania, Belarus, Kyrgyzstan, Moldova and Uzbekistan. HERE may update such list from time to time. The license rights granted to Client under this TL with respect to the Data for such countries are contingent upon Client's compliance with all applicable laws and regulations, including, without limitation, any required licenses or approvals to distribute the Application incorporating such Data in such respective countries.	
Great Britain	"Contains Ordnance Survey data © Crown copyright and database right 2010 Contains Royal Mail data © Royal Mail copyright and database right 2010"		
Greece	"Copyright Geomatics Ltd."		
Hungary	"Copyright © 2003; Top-Map Ltd."		
Italy	"La Banca Dati Italiana è stata prodotta usando quale riferimento anche cartografia numerica ed al tratto prodotta e fornita dalla Regione Toscana."		
Norway	"Copyright © 2000; Norwegian Mapping Authority"	VI. Australia Territory A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy: Copyright. Based on data provided under license from PSMA Australia Limited (www.pasma.com.au).	
Portugal	"Source: IgeoE – Portugal"		

Appendices

Product incorporates data which is © 20XX Telstra Corporation Limited, GM Holden Limited, Intelomatics Australia Pty Ltd and Continental Pty Ltd.

B. Third Party Notices for Australia. In addition to the foregoing, the End-User Terms for any Application containing RDS-TMC Traffic Codes for Australia shall contain the following notice: “Product incorporates traffic location codes which is © 20XX Telstra Corporation Limited and its licensors.”

AT&T Vehicle Network Carrier Telematics Disclosure

END USER FOR PURPOSES OF THIS SECTION MEANS YOU AND YOUR HEIRS, EXECUTORS, LEGAL PERSONAL REPRESENTATIVES AND PERMITTED ASSIGNS. FOR PURPOSES OF THIS SECTION “UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER” INCLUDES ITS AFFILIATES AND CONTRACTORS AND THEIR RESPECTIVE OFFICERS, DIRECTORS, EMPLOYEES, SUCCESSORS AND ASSIGNS. END USER HAS NO CONTRACTUAL RELATIONSHIP WITH THE UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER AND END USER IS NOT A THIRD PARTY BENEFICIARY OF ANY AGREEMENT BETWEEN FORD AND UNDERLYING CARRIER. END USER UNDERSTANDS AND AGREES THAT THE UNDERLYING CARRIER HAS NO LEGAL, EQUITABLE, OR OTHER LIABILITY OF ANY KIND TO END USER. IN ANY EVENT, REGARDLESS OF THE FORM OF THE ACTION, WHETHER FOR BREACH OF CONTRACT, WARRANTY, NEGLIGENCE, STRICT LIABILITY IN TORT OR OTHERWISE, END USER’S EXCLUSIVE REMEDY FOR CLAIMS ARISING IN ANY WAY IN CONNECTION WITH THIS AGREEMENT, FOR ANY CAUSE WHATSOEVER, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO ANY FAILURE OR

DISRUPTION OF SERVICE PROVIDED HEREUNDER, IS LIMITED TO PAYMENT OF DAMAGES IN AN AMOUNT NOT TO EXCEED THE AMOUNT PAID BY END USER FOR THE SERVICES DURING THE TWO-MONTH PERIOD PRECEDING THE DATE THE CLAIM AROSE.

(ii) END USER AGREES TO INDEMNIFY AND HOLD HARMLESS THE UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER AND ITS OFFICERS, EMPLOYEES, AND AGENTS AGAINST ANY AND ALL CLAIMS, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION CLAIMS FOR LIBEL, SLANDER, OR ANY PROPERTY DAMAGE, PERSONAL INJURY OR DEATH, ARISING IN ANY WAY, DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY, IN CONNECTION WITH THIS AGREEMENT OR THE USE, FAILURE TO USE, OR INABILITY TO USE THE DEVICE EXCEPT WHERE THE CLAIMS RESULT FROM THE UNDERLYING CARRIER’S GROSS NEGLIGENCE OR WILLFUL MISCONDUCT. THIS INDEMNITY WILL SURVIVE THE TERMINATION OF THE AGREEMENT.

(iii) END USER HAS NO PROPERTY RIGHT IN ANY NUMBER ASSIGNED TO THE DEVICE.

(iv) END USER UNDERSTANDS THAT FORD AND THE UNDERLYING CARRIER CANNOT GUARANTY THE SECURITY OF WIRELESS TRANSMISSIONS, AND WILL NOT BE LIABLE FOR ANY LACK OF SECURITY RELATING TO THE USE OF THE SERVICES

THE SERVICE IS FOR [END USER’S] USE ONLY AND END USER MAY NOT RESELL THE SERVICE TO ANY OTHER PARTY. END USER UNDERSTANDS THAT THE UNDERLYING CARRIER DOES NOT GUARANTEE ANY END USER UNINTERRUPTED SERVICE OR COVERAGE. THE UNDERLYING CARRIER DOES NOT WARRANT THAT END USERS CAN OR WILL BE LOCATED USING THE SERVICE. THE UNDERLYING CARRIER

Appendices

MAKES NO WARRANTY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, SUITABILITY, OR PERFORMANCE REGARDING ANY SERVICES OR GOODS, AND IN NO EVENT SHALL AT&T BE LIABLE, WHETHER OR NOT DUE TO ITS OWN NEGLIGENCE, FOR ANY: (A) ACT OR OMISSION OF A THIRD PARTY; (B) MISTAKES, OMISSIONS, INTERRUPTIONS, ERRORS, FAILURES TO TRANSMIT, DELAYS, OR DEFECTS IN THE SERVICE PROVIDED BY OR THROUGH THE UNDERLYING CARRIER; (C) DAMAGE OR INJURY CAUSED BY SUSPENSION OR TERMINATION BY THE UNDERLYING CARRIER; OR (D) DAMAGE OR INJURY CAUSED BY A FAILURE OR DELAY IN CONNECTING A CALL TO ANY ENTITY, INCLUDING 911 OR ANY OTHER EMERGENCY SERVICE. TO THE FULL EXTENT ALLOWED BY LAW, THE END USER RELEASES, INDEMNIFIES AND HOLDS THE UNDERLYING CARRIER HARMLESS FROM AND AGAINST ANY AND ALL CLAIMS OF ANY PERSON OR ENTITY FOR DAMAGES OF ANY NATURE ARISING IN ANY WAY FROM OR RELATING TO, DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY, SERVICES PROVIDED BY THE UNDERLYING CARRIER OR ANY PERSON'S USE THEREOF, INCLUDING CLAIMS ARISING IN WHOLE OR IN PART FROM THE ALLEGED NEGLIGENCE OF THE UNDERLYING CARRIER.

VII. China Territory

Personal Use Only

You agree to use this Data together with [insert name of Client Application] for the solely personal, non-commercial purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you may copy this Data only as necessary for your personal use to (i)

view it, and (ii) save it, provided that you do not remove any copyright notices that appear and do not modify the Data in any way. You agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

Restrictions

Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by NAV2, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not (a) use this Data with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs. You agree to cease using this Data if you fail to comply with these terms and conditions.

Limited Warranty

NAV2 warrants that (a) the Data will perform substantially in accordance with the accompanying written materials for a period of ninety (90) days from the date of receipt, and (b) any support services provided by NAV2 shall be substantially as described in applicable written materials provided to you by NAV2, and NAV2's support engineers will make commercially reasonable efforts to solve any problem issues.

Appendices

Customer Remedies

NAV2 and its suppliers' entire liability and your exclusive remedy shall be, at NAV2's sole discretion, either (a) return of the price paid, if any, or (b) repair or replacement of the Data that do not meet NAV2's Limited Warranty and that are returned to NAV2 with a copy of your receipt. This Limited Warranty is void if failure of the Data has resulted from accident, abuse, or misapplication. Any replacement Data will be warranted for the remainder of the original warranty period or thirty (30) days, whichever is longer. Neither these remedies nor any product support services offered by NAV2 are available without proof of purchase from an authorized international source.

No Other Warranty:

EXCEPT FOR THE LIMITED WARRANTY SET FORTH ABOVE AND TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OWNERSHIP OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Certain warranty exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Limited Liability:

TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR

FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF NAV2 OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL NAV2's OR ITS SUPPLIERS' LIABILITY HEREUNDER EXCEED THE PRICE PAID. Certain liability exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Export Control

You agree not to export to anywhere any part of the Data provided to you or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations.

IP Protection

The Data are owned by NAV2 or its suppliers and are protected by applicable copyright and other intellectual property law and treaties. The Data are provided solely on the basis of a license to use, not sale.

Entire Agreement

These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between NAV2 (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

Appendices

Governing Law.

The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the People's Republic of China, without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. Any dispute arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder shall be submitted to the Shanghai International Economic and Trade Arbitration Commission for arbitration.

Gracenote® Copyright

CD and music-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright©

2000-2007 Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000-2007 Gracenote. This product and service may practice one or more of the following U.S. Patents 5,987,525; 6,061,680; 6,154,773; 6,161,132; 6,230,192; 6,230,207; 6,240,459; 6,330,593 and other patents issued or pending. Some services supplied under license from Open Globe, Inc. for U.S. Patent 6,304,523.

Gracenote and CDDb are registered trademarks of Gracenote. The Gracenote logo and logotype, and the "Powered by Gracenote™" logo are trademarks of Gracenote.

Gracenote® End User License Agreement (EULA)

This device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of 2000 Powell Street Emeryville, California 94608 ("Gracenote").

The software from Gracenote (the "Gracenote Software") enables this device to do disc and music file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information ("Gracenote Data") from online servers

("Gracenote Servers"), and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended End User functions of this device. This device may contain content belonging to Gracenote's providers. If so, all of the restrictions set forth herein with respect to Gracenote Data shall also apply to such content and such content providers shall be entitled to all of the benefits and protections set forth herein that are available to Gracenote. You agree that you will use the content from Gracenote ("Gracenote Content"), Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal, non-commercial use only. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data (except in a Tag associated with a music file) to any third party. YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE CONTENT, GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.

You agree that your non-exclusive licenses to use the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your licenses terminate, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers.

Gracenote, respectively, reserve all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote Servers and Gracenote Content, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will either Gracenote become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide,

Appendices

including any copyrighted material or music file information. You agree that Gracenote may enforce its respective rights, collectively or separately, under this agreement against you, directly in each company's own name.

Gracenote uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow Gracenote to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page at www.gracenote.com for the Gracenote Privacy Policy.

THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, EACH ITEM OF GRACENOTE DATA AND THE GRACENOTE CONTENT ARE LICENSED TO YOU "AS IS". NEITHER GRACENOTE MAKES ANY REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF ANY GRACENOTE DATA FROM THE GRACENOTE SERVERS OR GRACENOTE CONTENT. GRACENOTE COLLECTIVELY AND SEPARATELY RESERVE THE RIGHT TO DELETE DATA AND/OR CONTENT FROM THE COMPANIES' RESPECTIVE SERVERS OR, IN THE CASE OF GRACENOTE, CHANGE DATA CATEGORIES FOR ANY CAUSE THAT GRACENOTE DEEMS SUFFICIENT. NO WARRANTY IS MADE THAT EITHER GRACENOTE CONTENT OR THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS ARE ERROR-FREE OR THAT THE FUNCTIONING OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED. GRACENOTE IS NOT OBLIGATED TO PROVIDE YOU WITH ANY ENHANCED OR ADDITIONAL DATA TYPES THAT GRACENOTE MAY CHOOSE TO PROVIDE IN THE FUTURE AND IS FREE TO DISCONTINUE ITS ONLINE SERVICES AT ANY TIME. GRACENOTE DISCLAIM ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO,

IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. NEITHER GRACENOTE WARRANTS THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES FOR ANY REASON WHATSOEVER. © Gracenote 2007.

Radio Frequency Statement

FCC ID: ACJ-SYNCG3-L

IC: 216B-SYNCG3-L

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- (1)** This device may not cause harmful interference, and
- (2)** this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.



WARNING: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

The antenna used for this transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

Appendices

Taiwan Territory

Note: In accordance with the management approach of low-power radio wave radiation motors:

Article 12: For approved and certified low-power radiation motor models, companies, firms or users must not alter the frequency, increase the power or change the characteristics and functions of the original design without authorization.

Article 14: The usage of low-power radio-frequency motors must not affect aviation safety and interfere with legal telecommunications. Should interference be detected, immediately stop using the device and only resume usage after ensuring that there is no longer any interference. For the legal telecommunication and wireless telecommunication of the telco, the low-power radio frequency motor must be able to tolerate legal limits of interference from telecommunication, industrial, scientific and radio wave equipment.

SUNA TRAFFIC CHANNEL – TERMS AND CONDITIONS

By activating, using and/or accessing the SUNA Traffic Channel, SUNA Predictive or other content or material provided by Intelematics (together, **SUNA Products and/or Services**), you must accept certain terms and conditions. The following is a brief summary of the terms and conditions that apply to you. To view the full terms and conditions relevant to your use of the SUNA Products and/or Services, please consult:

Website
www.sunatraffic.com.au/termsandconditions/

1. Acceptance

By using SUNA Products and/or Services, you will be deemed to have accepted and agreed to be bound by the terms and conditions fully detailed at:

Website
www.sunatraffic.com.au/termsandconditions/

2. Intellectual Property

SUNA Products and/or Services are for your personal use. You may not record, or retransmit the content, nor use the content in association with any other traffic information or route guidance service or device not approved by Intelematics. You obtain no right of ownership in any Intellectual Property Rights (including copyright) in the data that is used to provide SUNA Products and/or Services.

3. Appropriate Use

SUNA Products and/or Services are intended as an aid to personal motoring and travel planning, and do not provide comprehensive or accurate information on all occasions. On occasions, you may experience additional delay as a result of using SUNA Products and/or Services. You acknowledge that it is not intended, or suitable, for use in applications where time of arrival or driving directions may impact the safety of the public or yourself.

4. Use of SUNA Products and Services while driving

You, and other authorised drivers of the vehicle in which SUNA Products and/or Services are available or installed and active, remain at all times responsible for observing all relevant laws and codes of safe driving. In particular, you agree to only actively operate SUNA Products and/or Services when the Vehicle is at a complete stop and it is safe to do so.

Appendices

5. Service Continuity and Reception of the SUNA Traffic Channel

We will use reasonable endeavours to provide the SUNA Traffic Channel 24 hours a day, 365 days a year. The SUNA Traffic Channel may occasionally be unavailable for technical reasons or for planned maintenance. We will try to perform maintenance at times when congestion is light. We reserve the right to withdraw SUNA Products and/or Services at any time.

Also, we cannot assure the uninterrupted reception of the SUNA Traffic Channel RDS-TMC signal at any particular location.

6. Limitation of Liability

Neither Intelematics (nor its suppliers or the manufacturer of your device (the “**Suppliers**”)) shall be liable to you or to any third party for any damages either direct, indirect, incidental, consequential or otherwise arising out of the use of or inability to use SUNA Products and/or Services even if Intelematics or a Supplier has been advised of the possibility of such damages. You also acknowledge that the neither Intelematics nor any Supplier guarantees nor make any warranties that relate to the availability, accuracy or completeness of SUNA Products and/or Services, and to the extent which it is lawful to do so, both Intelematics and each Supplier excludes any warranties which might otherwise be implied by any State or Federal legislation in relation to SUNA Products and/or Services.

7. Please Note

Great care has been taken in preparing this manual. Constant product development may mean that some information is not entirely up-to-date. The information in this document is subject to change without notice.

DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY

Your vehicle could have components that transmit and receive radio waves and are therefore subject to government regulation.

These components must accept any interference received, including interference that could cause undesired operation. For certification labels and declarations of conformity, visit www.wirelessconformity.ford.com.

Index

A

A/C	
See: Climate Control.....	73
About This Manual.....	7
ABS	
See: Brakes.....	111
ABS driving hints	
See: Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes.....	111
Accessories	
See: Replacement Parts Recommendation.....	9
Adjusting the Steering Wheel.....	48
Air Conditioning	
See: Climate Control.....	73
Air Vents.....	73
Alarm	
See: Anti-Theft Alarm.....	46
AM/FM Radio - Vehicles Without: SYNC 3.....	206
Anti-Theft Alarm.....	46
Appendices.....	266
Apps.....	218
At a Glance.....	16
Audible Warnings and Indicators.....	64
Audio System.....	202
Audio Unit Clock and Date Displays - Vehicles Without: SYNC 3.....	207
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: SYNC 3, Vehicles Without: Touchscreen Display.....	203
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: SYNC 3/ Touchscreen Display.....	205
Audio Unit - Vehicles Without: SYNC 3.....	202
Autolamps.....	53
Automatic Climate Control.....	74
Auto-Start-Stop.....	92
Autowipers.....	49
Auxiliary Power Points.....	84

B

Battery	
See: Changing the 12V Battery.....	157
Bonnet Lock	
See: Opening and Closing the Hood.....	148

Brake Fluid Check.....	156
Brakes.....	111
General Information.....	111
Breaking-In.....	132
Bulb Specification Chart.....	197

C

Capacities and Specifications - 1.0L EcoBoost™.....	193
Capacities and Specifications - 1.5L Duratorq-TDCi Diesel.....	195
Capacities and Specifications.....	190
Car Wash	
See: Cleaning the Exterior.....	166
Catalytic Converter - 1.0L EcoBoost™.....	100
Changing a Bulb.....	161
Changing a Fuse.....	146
Changing a Road Wheel.....	180
Changing the 12V Battery.....	157
Changing the Front Wiper Blades.....	159
Changing the Rear Wiper Blades - Vehicles With: Manual Liftgate.....	160
Changing the Rear Wiper Blades - Vehicles With: Rear Cargo Doors.....	160
Checking the Wiper Blades.....	159
Child Restraint Positioning.....	22
Child Safety.....	18
Child Safety Locks.....	26
Cigar Lighter.....	84
Cleaning the Exterior.....	166
Cleaning the Interior.....	167
Cleaning the Wheels.....	169
Climate.....	244
Climate Control.....	73
Clutch Fluid Check.....	157
Cold Weather Precautions.....	131
Connecting a Bluetooth® Device - Vehicles Without: SYNC 3.....	207
Coolant Check	
See: Engine Coolant Check.....	155
Cruise Control.....	121
Principle of Operation.....	121
Cruise control	
See: Using Cruise Control.....	121
Cup Holders.....	85
Cup Holder Precautions.....	85

Index

D		
Data Privacy.....	11	
Declaration of Conformity.....	294	
Device Holder.....	86	
Installing and Removing a Device.....	86	
Diesel Particulate Filter - 1.5L		
Duratorq-TDCi Diesel.....	107	
Digital Radio - Vehicles Without: SYNC		
3.....	207	
Direction Indicators.....	55	
Doors and Locks.....	41	
Driver Airbag.....	31	
Driver Knee Airbag.....	34	
Driving Aids.....	122	
Driving Hints.....	131	
Driving Through Water.....	132	
E		
Economical Driving.....	131	
Electromagnetic Compatibility.....	266	
Emergency Assistance.....	35	
Emergency Call Limitations.....	37	
Emergency Call Requirements.....	36	
Emergency Call System Data.....	14	
End User License Agreement.....	269	
Engine Coolant Check.....	155	
Engine Cooling Fan - Diesel.....	155	
Engine Cooling Fan - Gasoline.....	155	
Engine Emission Control.....	100	
Engine Immobilizer		
See: Passive Anti-Theft System.....	46	
Engine Oil Check.....	154	
Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.0L		
EcoBoost™.....	154	
Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.5L Duratorq-TDCi		
Diesel.....	154	
Entertainment.....	215	
Environment.....	15	
Event Data.....	12	
Exterior Mirrors.....	57	
F		
Fan		
See: Engine Cooling Fan - Diesel.....	155	
See: Engine Cooling Fan - Gasoline.....	155	
Fastening the Seatbelts.....	27	
First Aid Kit.....	134	
Flat Tire		
See: Changing a Road Wheel.....	180	
Flat Tire Inflation		
See: Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit.....	170	
Floor Mats.....	132	
Fog Lamps - Front		
See: Front Fog Lamps.....	53	
Fog Lamps - Rear		
See: Rear Fog Lamps.....	54	
Front Fog Lamps.....	53	
Front Parking Aid.....	116	
Front Wiper Blades		
See: Changing the Front Wiper Blades.....	159	
Fuel and Refueling.....	94	
Fuel Consumption Figures - 1.0L		
EcoBoost™.....	199	
Fuel Consumption Figures - 1.5L		
Duratorq-TDCi Diesel.....	200	
Fuel Consumption Figures.....	201	
Fuel Filler Funnel Location.....	95	
Fuel Quality - Diesel.....	95	
Fuel Quality - Gasoline.....	94	
Fuel Shutoff.....	134	
Fuse Box Locations.....	138	
Fuses.....	138	
Fuse Specification Chart.....	139	
G		
Gasoline Particulate Filter - 1.0L		
EcoBoost™.....	105	
Gauges.....	59	
Gearbox		
See: Transmission.....	110	
General Information on Radio		
Frequencies.....	38	
H		
Handbrake		
See: Parking Brake.....	111	
Hazard Flashers.....	134	
Headlamp Exit Delay.....	53	
Headlamp Leveling.....	54	
Headrest		
See: Head Restraints.....	78	

Index

Head Restraints.....	78
Heated Exterior Mirrors.....	77
Heated Rear Window.....	77
Heated Seats.....	83
Heated Windshield.....	77
Heating	
See: Climate Control.....	73
Hill Start Assist.....	112
Hints on Controlling the Interior Climate	
- Vehicles With: Automatic	
Temperature Control.....	75
Hints on Controlling the Interior Climate	
- Vehicles With: Manual Temperature	
Control.....	76
Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock	
Brakes.....	111
Hood Lock	
See: Opening and Closing the Hood.....	148
I	
Ignition Switch.....	87
Information Displays.....	65
General Information.....	65
Information Messages.....	68
Installing and Removing the	
Bulkhead.....	128
Installing and Removing the Rear Cargo	
Luggage Cover.....	126
Installing and Removing the Rear Cargo	
Net.....	125
Installing Child Restraints.....	18
Instrument Cluster.....	59
Instrument Lighting Dimmer.....	53
Instrument Panel - LHD.....	16
Instrument Panel - RHD.....	17
Instrument Panel Storage.....	85
Opening the Instrument Panel Storage	
Compartment.....	85
Interior Lamps.....	55
Interior Mirror - Vehicles With:	
Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror/Interior	
Mirror With Camera Display.....	58
Interior Mirror - Vehicles With: Interior	
Mirror.....	58
Introduction.....	7

J

Jump Starting the Vehicle.....	135
--------------------------------	-----

K

Keys and Remote Controls.....	38
-------------------------------	----

L

Liftgate.....	45
Lighting Control.....	52
Lighting.....	52
General Information.....	52
Load Carrying.....	123
Roof Rack.....	123
Load Carrying Precautions.....	123
Locking and Unlocking.....	41
Lug Nuts	
See: Changing a Road Wheel.....	180
Lug Nuts.....	189

M

Maintenance.....	148
General Information.....	148
Manual Climate Control.....	73
Manual Liftgate.....	45
Manual Seats.....	79
Manual Transmission.....	110
Message Center	
See: Information Displays.....	65
Mirrors	
See: Windows and Mirrors.....	56
Mobile Communications	
Equipment.....	10
Mobile Device Data - Vehicles With:	
SYNC 3.....	13

N

Navigation.....	249
-----------------	-----

O

Oil Check	
See: Engine Oil Check.....	154
Opening and Closing the Hood.....	148

Index

Overhead Storage.....	85
Locating the Overhead Storage.....	85

P

Parking Aids.....	115
Principle of Operation.....	115
Parking Brake.....	111
Passenger Airbag.....	32
Passive Anti-Theft System.....	46
PATS	
See: Passive Anti-Theft System.....	46
Phone.....	217
Playing Media From a USB Device -	
Vehicles Without: SYNC 3.....	208
Power Door Locks	
See: Locking and Unlocking.....	41
Power Windows - Vehicles With:	
One-Touch Open and Close Front	
Windows.....	56
Power Windows - Vehicles With:	
One-Touch Open Driver Window.....	56
Protecting the Environment.....	15
Puncture	
See: Changing a Road Wheel.....	180

R

REACH.....	9
Rear Cargo Area Anchor Points.....	127
Locating the Rear Cargo Area Anchor	
Points.....	127
Rear Cargo Area Anchor Point Load	
Capacities.....	128
Rear Cargo Area.....	125
Rear Cargo Area Anchor Points.....	127
Rear Fog Lamps.....	54
Rear Parking Aid.....	115
Rear Seats.....	81
Rear View Camera.....	118
Rear View Camera	
See: Rear View Camera.....	118
Rear Window Wiper and Washers.....	51
Rear Wiper Blades	
See: Changing the Rear Wiper Blades -	
Vehicles With: Manual Liftgate.....	160
See: Changing the Rear Wiper Blades -	
Vehicles With: Rear Cargo Doors.....	160

Reduced Engine Performance.....	131
Refueling.....	97
Remote Control.....	38
Repairing Minor Paint Damage.....	169
Replacement Parts	
Recommendation.....	9
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote	
Control.....	40
Roadside Emergencies.....	134
Roof Rack.....	123
Removing and Installing Roof Rack	
Crossbars.....	123
Roof Rack Load Capacities.....	124
Roof Rack Precautions.....	123
Running-In	
See: Breaking-In.....	132
Running Out of Fuel.....	95

S

Safety Precautions.....	94
Seatbelt Reminder.....	30
Seatbelts.....	27
Seats.....	78
Security.....	46
Selective Catalytic Reductant System -	
1.5L Duratorq-TDCi Diesel.....	100
Service Data.....	12
Settings Data.....	13
Settings.....	219
Side Airbags.....	33
Side Curtain Airbags.....	34
Sitting in the Correct Position.....	78
Sliding Door Window.....	58
Snow Chains	
See: Using Snow Chains.....	175
Spare Wheel	
See: Changing a Road Wheel.....	180
Special Notices.....	10
Speed Control	
See: Cruise Control.....	121
Speed Limiter.....	122
Stability Control.....	114
Principle of Operation.....	114
Starter Switch	
See: Ignition Switch.....	87
Starting a Diesel Engine.....	89
Starting a Gasoline Engine.....	88

Index

Starting and Stopping the Engine.....	87
General Information.....	87
Steering Wheel Lock.....	88
Steering Wheel.....	48
Storage.....	85
Cup Holders.....	85
Device Holder.....	86
Instrument Panel Storage.....	85
Overhead Storage.....	85
Under Seat Storage.....	85
Streaming Bluetooth Audio - Vehicles	
Without: SYNC 3.....	207
Supplementary Restraints System.....	31
Principle of Operation.....	31
Switching Off the Engine.....	91
Switching the Passenger Airbag On and	
Off.....	32
Symbols Glossary.....	7
SYNC™ 3.....	210
General Information.....	210
SYNC™ 3 Troubleshooting.....	224

T

Technical Specifications	
See: Capacities and Specifications.....	190
Tire Care.....	174
Tire Inflation When Punctured	
See: Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit.....	170
Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	176
Tire Pressures - Tourneo.....	186
Tire Pressures - Transit.....	188
Tire Repair Kit	
See: Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit.....	170
Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit.....	170
Tires	
See: Wheels and Tires.....	170
Towing a Trailer.....	129
Towing Points.....	136
Towing the Vehicle on Four	
Wheels.....	130
Towing.....	129
Traction Control.....	113
Principle of Operation.....	113
Transmission.....	110
Trip Computer.....	67

U

Under Hood Overview - 1.0L EcoBoost™,	
LHD.....	150
Under Hood Overview - 1.0L EcoBoost™,	
RHD.....	151
Under Hood Overview - 1.5L	
Duratorq-TDCi Diesel, LHD.....	152
Under Hood Overview - 1.5L	
Duratorq-TDCi Diesel, RHD.....	153
Under Seat Storage.....	85
Locating the Under Seat Storage	
Compartment.....	85
Unique Driving Characteristics.....	92
USB Port.....	208
Using Cruise Control.....	121
Using Snow Chains.....	175
Using Stability Control.....	114
Using Summer Tires.....	175
Using Traction Control.....	113
Using Voice Recognition.....	211
Using Voice Recognition - Vehicles	
Without: SYNC 3.....	208
Using Winter Tires.....	175

V

Vehicle Care.....	166
Vehicle Dimensions - Tourneo.....	190
Vehicle Dimensions - Transit.....	191
Vehicle Identification Number.....	193
Vehicle Identification Plate.....	192
Ventilation	
See: Climate Control.....	73
Vents	
See: Air Vents.....	73
VIN	
See: Vehicle Identification Number.....	193

W

Warning Lamps and Indicators.....	61
Warning Triangle.....	134
Washer Fluid Check.....	159
Washers	
See: Cleaning the Exterior.....	166
See: Wipers and Washers.....	49
What Is Emergency Assistance.....	35

Index

Wheel Nuts	
See: Changing a Road Wheel.....	180
Wheels and Tires.....	170
General Information.....	170
Windows and Mirrors.....	56
Windshield Washers.....	50
Windshield Wipers.....	49
Winter Tires	
See: Using Winter Tires.....	175
Wiper Blades	
See: Checking the Wiper Blades.....	159
Wipers and Washers.....	49

